

Rule 6

Shall I/We से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न

(A) इस तरह के प्रश्नों से जब कोई सूचना (information) हो या कोई Speculation हो। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : "Shall I ever see her again ?", he said .

Speculation

Indirect : He wondered if he would ever see her again.

(ii) **Direct** : "When shall I know the result of the election?" Ram asked.

Indirect : Ram asked when he would know the result of the election.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में shall को would में परिवर्तित किया जाता है।

(B) जब कोई सलाह या प्रार्थना की गई हो। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : He said to the customer, "Shall we despatch these letters?"

Indirect : He asked the customer if they should despatch those letters.

(ii) **Direct** : "What shall I say father ?" he said.

Indirect : He asked his father what he should say.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में सलाह या प्रार्थना का भाव रहता है। यहाँ Indirect speech में shall को should में परिवर्तित किया जाता है। जब इस तरह के वाक्यों में choice पूछी जाती है। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : "Shall I lock the room or leave it unlocked ?" Rajesh said.

Indirect : Rajesh asked whether he should lock the room or leave it unlocked.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में whether का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(C) जब Shall का प्रयोग वाक्य में 'offer' (प्रस्ताव) के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : "Shall I bring you something to eat?" she said.

Indirect : She offered to bring me something to eat.

(D) जब Shall का प्रयोग एक सुझाव के अर्थ में हो। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : "Shall we meet again tomorrow?" he said.

Indirect : He suggested to meet again the next day.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में suggested का प्रयोग करके Indirect speech में परिवर्तित किया जाता है।

Rule 7

Will you / would you / could you से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्नों को Indirect speech में परिवर्तित करते समय, वाक्य का भाव देखकर Reporting verb में परिवर्तित किया जाता है। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : He said, "Will you be there on Monday?" (Ordinary question)

Indirect : He asked if he would be there on Monday.

(ii) **Direct** : He shouted, "Will you keep silence?"

Indirect : He shouted at me to keep silence. Or He ordered me to keep silence.

(iii) **Direct** : He asked, "Would you like to do job in USA?"

Indirect : He asked if I would like to do job in USA.

(iv) **Direct** : He said, "Would you like a lift?"

Indirect : He offered me a lift.

(v) **Direct** : He said, "Would you like to have a drink?"

Indirect : He invited me for a drink. Or He offered me a drink.

Imperative Sentences

Imperative Sentence ऐसे वाक्य हैं जिनमें आदेश (Order), निर्देश (Direction, Command) प्रार्थना (Request), सुझाव (Suggestion), सलाह (Advice) का भाव निहित रहता है। ऐसे वाक्यों को Indirect Narration में परिवर्तित करते समय निम्न नियमों का ध्यान रखें :

Rule 1

Reporting verb को वाक्य के भाव के अनुसार Order, Command, Advice, Suggest, Request, Warn etc. में परिवर्तित करें।

Rule 2

Conjunction 'that' की जगह 'to' का प्रयोग करें। यदि वाक्य Negative है तो 'not to' का प्रयोग करें।

Rule 3

वाक्य में यदि Please, Kindly जैसे शब्द हैं तो इनको Indirect Speech में नहीं रखें। वाक्य के भावार्थ के अनुसार Request का प्रयोग किया जाने से ये स्वतः ही वाक्य के भाव में आ जाते हैं।

Look at the following solved examples :

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) She said to Ramu, "Please bring my book." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She requested Ramu to bring her book. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) She said to me, "Have a glass of milk". | <i>Direct</i> |
| She asked me to have a glass of milk. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (3) Ram said to Sita, "Take medicines regularly." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Ram advised Sita to take medicines regularly. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (4) I said to Hari, "Don't pluck the flowers". | <i>Direct</i> |
| I ordered Hari not to pluck the flowers. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (5) The SP said to the SHO, "Shoot the robber". | <i>Direct</i> |
| The SP ordered the SHO to shoot the robber. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (6) The Principal said to the students, "Get out from office." | <i>Direct</i> |
| The Principal ordered the students to get out from office. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (7) He said, "Follow my instructions". | <i>Direct</i> |
| He ordered me to follow his instructions. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (8) He said to Sarla, "Lend me your Physics book". | <i>Direct</i> |
| He requested Sarla to lend him her Physics book. | <i>Indirect</i> |



Negative Imperative वाक्यों में जो Do not या Don't जैसे शब्दों से शुरू होते हैं उनमें जैसा हमने पहले बताया है, 'not to' का प्रयोग करते हैं। 'not to' की जगह forbade का प्रयोग भी किया जाता है, लेकिन forbade के साथ वाक्य में not का प्रयोग नहीं करना है, क्योंकि forbade स्वयं ही Negative है, इसका अर्थ है मना करना। जैसे :

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) The teacher said to Hari, "Don't write on the table." | <i>Direct</i> |
| The teacher forbade Hari to write on the table. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| Or | |
| The teacher instructed Hari not to write on the table. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) The Principal said, "Don't make a noise students." | <i>Direct</i> |
| The Principal forbade the students to make a noise. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| Or | |
| The Principal instructed the students not to make a noise. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (3) She said to me, "Don't park your car here." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She forbade me to park my car there. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| Or | |
| She asked me not to park my car there. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Emphatic Imperative (Use of 'Do')

कई बार Imperative वाक्यों को आग्रहपूर्ण (Emphatic) बनाने के लिए 'Do' का प्रयोग किया जाता है, यह 'Do' का प्रयोग मात्र अधिक आग्रह या विनम्रता को प्रदर्शित करने हेतु प्रयुक्त होता है। तो ऐसे वाक्यों को Indirect में बदलते समय 'Do' को हटा दिया जाता है एवं ऊपर बताए गए नियमानुसार वाक्य को Indirect में बदला जाता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| (1) He said to me, "Do have a cup of coffee, please". | <i>Direct</i> |
| He requested me to have a cup of coffee. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) She said to me, "Do come again." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She requested me to come again. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (3) Rahim said to her, "Do have a seat, please." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Rahim requested her to have a seat. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Imperative and Tag Question

कई बार Imperative Sentence के साथ एक Tag Question लगा रहता है, Tag Question का प्रयोग अपनी बात का महत्त्व बढ़ाने के लिए अथवा ध्यान आकर्षित कर, उत्तर पाने की आकांक्षा के लिए किया जाता है। इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को Indirect में बदलते समय, Tag Question को महत्त्व नहीं दिया जाता है। शेष वाक्य को पहले बताये नियमानुसार Indirect में बदलते हैं। जैसे :

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) He said to me, "Open the door, will you?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| He asked me to open the door. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) She Said to Ram, "Bring me a glass of water, won't you?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| She asked Ram to bring her a glass of water. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (3) The leader said to us, "Caste your votes, will you?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| The leader advised us to caste our votes. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Sentences with 'Let'

(A) Let से शुरू होने वाले वाक्य भी एक प्रकार के Imperative वाक्य ही होते हैं। Let से कई अर्थ निकलते हैं। सुझाव (Suggestion), प्रस्ताव (Proposal) हेतु Let का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है :

- | |
|---|
| (1) She said to me, "Let us go to market". |
| She suggested to me to go to market. |
| <i>Or</i> |
| She suggested to me that we should go to market. |
| (2) He said to me, "Let us purchase this house". |
| He proposed to me to purchase that house. |
| <i>Or</i> |
| He proposed to me that we should purchase that house. |



- (a) Let से शुरू होने वाले वाक्यों में Imperative वाक्य की तरह 'to' का प्रयोग भी उपरोक्तानुसार कर सकते हैं। जब should का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग suggested/proposed के बाद करना होगा।
- (b) यदि Reporting verb—said है तो केवल Suggested या Proposed का प्रयोग होता है एवं Reporting verb, said to होने पर suggested to या proposed to का प्रयोग होगा।
- | |
|---|
| (1) She said, "Let him complete his work first." |
| She suggested that he should complete his work first. |
| (2) He said, "Let me solve this problem first." |
| He suggested that he should solve that problem first. |

(B) Let से व्यक्ति की इच्छा (Wish) भी व्यक्त की जाती है। ऐसे वाक्यों में Reporting verb, wish का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। जैसे :

- (1) The student said, "Let me take food".
The student wished that he should take food.
- (2) The lady said, "Let me have an ice cream pack".
The lady wished that she should have an ice cream pack.
- (3) She said, "Let him be my friend".
She wished that he should be her friend.

(C) Let से Order/Request का भाव भी व्यक्त किया जाता है। ऐसे वाक्यों में Reporting verb, order या request का प्रयोग करते हैं। ऐसे वाक्यों में जब अनुमति माँगी या दी जाती है तो to allow का प्रयोग conjunction की तरह किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) The boy said to the teacher, "Let me go home now."
The boy requested the teacher to allow him to go home then.
- (2) The Principal said to the peon, "Let the students come in".
The Principal ordered the peon to allow the students come in.



Let से शुरू होने वाले वाक्यों में कभी-कभी Let को to let में बदलकर Indirect Speech में परिवर्तन किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) I said to her, "Let me go to market" I requested her to let me go to market.
- (2) She said to Shyam, "Let him go to Jaipur." She requested Shyam to let him go to Jaipur.

Optative Sentences

(A) ऐसे वाक्य जिनमें Good wishes, प्रार्थना, अभिवादन या इच्छा व्यक्त की जाती है, Optative Sentences कहलाते हैं।

(a) यदि वाक्य में कोई Good wish की गई हो तो Reporting verb को Wished या Prayed में बदला जाता है तथा that, conjunction का प्रयोग किया जाता है तथा वाक्य को Assertive sentence में बदलते हैं। जैसे :

- (1) My mother said to my friend, "May you live long !"
My mother wished my friend that he might live long.
- (2) She said to Sita, "May God bless you with a son!"
She prayed that God might bless Sita with a son.
- (3) She said, "God grant you success !"
She prayed that God might grant me success.



(a) यहाँ might के साथ verb की I form लगती है।

(b) वाक्य (3) में May का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ है तब भी Indirect में might का प्रयोग किया गया है। May की existence ऐसे वाक्यों में मानी जाती है।

(B) यदि वाक्य में Good morning, good evening, good day इत्यादि का प्रयोग अभिवादनस्वरूप किया गया है तो Reporting verb की जगह Wished का प्रयोग किया जाता है। यदि 'sir' को या जिससे अभिवादन किया गया है, वह भी Inverted commas में है तो उसे बाहर निकाल लिया जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) He said to the teacher, "Good morning." He wished the teacher good morning.
- (2) She said, "Good morning, sir !"
She wished the sir good morning.
- (3) I said, "Good afternoon, father !"
I wished my father good afternoon.

(C) यदि वाक्य में farewell (विदाई) सूचक शब्द जैसे : Good bye, farewell इत्यादि का प्रयोग किया गया हो तो Reporting verb—bade का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) She said to me, "Good bye". She bade me good bye.
- (2) The leader said, "Farewell my friends." The leader bade his friends farewell.

Exclamatory Sentences

ऐसे वाक्य जो अफसोस, घृणा, दुख, आश्चर्य, प्रसन्नता, शाबाशी देने का भाव व्यक्त करते हैं, Exclamatory sentences कहलाते हैं।

- इस तरह के वाक्यों को Indirect में बदलते समय, वाक्य के भावार्थ के अनुसार exclaimed with joy, exclaimed with sorrow, exclaimed with surprise, exclaimed with applause, exclaimed with anger, exclaimed with contempt जैसी Reporting verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- Alas, Bravo, Oh, Wow, Wah, Hurrah जैसे शब्दों को Indirect बनाते समय हटा दिया जाता है।
- Exclamatory वाक्यों को Assertive वाक्य में बदल दिया जाता है।
- यदि वाक्य में कोई इच्छा (जैसे : If I were a bird, If I were the P.M.) प्रकट की गई हो तो Reporting verb, wished का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Look at the following solved examples :

- She said, "If I were a bird !"
She wished that she would be a bird.
- He said, "If I were young again !"
He wished that he would be young again.
- Ram said, "Alas ! I have been ruined."
Ram exclaimed with sorrow that he had been ruined.
- The lady said, "Oh ! my dog is dead."
The lady exclaimed with sorrow that her dog was dead.
- He said, "What a beautiful girl Sita is !"
He exclaimed with praise that Sita was a beautiful girl.
- We said, "What a nice place it is !"
We exclaimed with surprise that it was a nice place.
- They said, "What a great fall !"
They exclaimed with applause that it was a great fall.
- The captain said, "Well done! my friends."
The captain exclaimed with applause that his friends had done well.
- The player said, "Hurrah ! we have won".
The player exclaimed with joy that they had won.
- He said, "Wow ! what a pleasant weather it is!"
He exclaimed with joy that it was a very pleasant weather.



(a) जिन वाक्यों में I were, He were जैसे वाक्य एक इच्छा प्रकट करते हैं, उन्हें Indirect Speech में बदलते समय would be का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(b) Exclamatory वाक्यों को Assertive वाक्यों में बदलते हैं। निम्न वाक्यों पर ध्यान देने से यह समझ में आ जायेगा।

Exclamatory

- What a beautiful girl she is!
- What a nice place it is!
- What a great fall!
- What an idea!
- What a fool you are!
- How dark the night is!

Assertive

- She is beautiful girl.
It is a very nice place.
It is a great fall.
It is a great idea.
You are a great fool.
It is a very dark night.

कुछ अन्य Exclamatory वाक्य देखें जो अधूरे से लगते हैं :

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) He said to me, "Congratulations!" | He congratulated me. |
| (2) The teacher said to the student, "Stupid!" | The teacher called the student, stupid. |
| (3) She said, "Thank you!" | She thanked me. |
| (4) They said to us, "Welcome!" | They welcomed us. |
| (5) I said to her, "Happy Christmas!" | I wished her happy Christmas. |

Miscellaneous Sentences

(A) जब वाक्यों में व्यक्ति का नाम **Inverted commas** के अन्दर **Reported Speech** में सम्मिलित होता है। जैसे :

- (1) He said, "Rajeev, I am waiting for you."
He told Rajeev that he was waiting for him (Rajeev).
- (2) She said, "Take your purse, Tony."
She asked Tony to take his purse.
- (3) Sheela said, "Brother, please help me."
Sheela requested her brother to help her.
- (4) He said, "Kuku, what are you doing?"
He asked Kuku what she was doing.

ऐसे वाक्यों में व्यक्ति के नाम को Reporting verb के साथ लगाकर शेष वाक्य को पूर्व बताए गए नियमों के अनुसार Indirect Speech में बदला जाता है।

(B) जब वाक्यों में 'Sir', 'Madam' का प्रयोग **Inverted commas** के अन्दर **Reported Speech** के साथ किया गया हो। जैसे :

- (1) He said, "May I leave now, Madam ?"
He asked the Madam if he might leave then.
- (2) She said, "May I attend the class, Sir ?"
She asked respectfully if she might attend the class.

(C) कुछ वाक्यों में **Well, Okay, You, See, You know** का प्रयोग किया गया होता है। जैसे :

- (1) The receptionist said, "Well, what can I do for you ?"
The receptionist asked politely what she could do for me.
- (2) 'Okay', she said, "I will consider your proposal."
She said that she would consider my proposal.

(D) वाक्यों में **Must** का प्रयोग एक **future action** या **Present action** में मजबूरी को प्रकट करता है, तो ऐसे वाक्यों को Indirect Speech में बदलते समय **Must** को **had to** में बदलते हैं। जैसे :

- (1) She said, "I must leave at once."
She said that she had to leave at once.
- (2) Ramesh said, "He must go to Jaipur tomorrow."
Ramesh said that he had to go to Jaipur the next day.

(E) **Must not** एवं **Need not** वाले वाक्य में इन शब्दों में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे :

- (1) He said, "You must not speak to anyone."
He said that I must not speak to anyone.
- (2) She said, "You need not purchase this book".
She said that I need not purchase that book.

(F) **Would, Should, Could, Might** वाले वाक्यों में इन शब्दों में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे :

- He said, "She would/ should/ could/ might attend the party".
He said that she would/ should /could /might attend the party.

- (G) वाक्य में यदि 'had to' का प्रयोग है तो वह had had to में परिवर्तित हो जाता है। यहाँ had to एक urgency को बताता है। जैसे :

The poet said, "After the function, I had to rush to my house."

The poet said that after the function he had to rush to his house.



यहाँ had to का प्रयोग Past Prefect Tense की तरह नहीं किया गया है।

- (H) **Joint Sentences** : जब कई वाक्य एक साथ होते हैं। जैसे :

- (1) She said, "I am a girl. I cannot stay here in night".

She said that she was a girl and added that she could not stay there in night.

- (2) Ramesh said, "Sita is going to Jaipur tomorrow. I can also go with her."

Ramesh said that Sita was going to Jaipur next day and he could also go with her.

- (3) Payal said, "I will not marry this year. I am preparing for IAS examinations".

Payal said that she would not marry that year and further added that she was preparing for IAS examinations.

- (I) इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को दूसरे वाक्य के लिए added, further added या and शब्द का प्रयोग कर, पूर्व में बताये गए नियमानुसार Indirect Speech में बदला जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) He said, "Do you know who is he ?"

He asked me if I knew who he was.

- (2) She said, "Can you find, where are the keys?"

She asked me if I could find where the keys were.

ऐसे वाक्यों में दोनों वाक्यों को ही Reporting verb को Tense के अनुसार बदला जाता है। जैसे :

- (3) He said, "Sarla is coming, wait here."

He said that Sarla was coming and asked me to wait there.

- (4) He said, "Where is your purse, I have lost mine."

He asked me where my purse was and added that he had lost his.

- (5) My father said, "I am going to office, where are you going?"

My father said that he was going to office and wanted to know where I was going.

इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को अलग-अलग हमने पूर्व Indirect Speech में आसानी से परिवर्तित किया है। जब इस तरह के वाक्य एक साथ आए तो पूर्व में बताए गए नियमानुसार ही परिवर्तित करें एवं बीच में added, wanted to know etc का प्रयोग करें। जैसे :

- (6) The leader said, "Friends, my country men, lend me your support. I will take care of your problems."

The leader addressed the people as friends, my countrymen and requested them to lend him their support. He further added that he would take care of their problems.

- (7) "Where are you going Sheela ? Come here and we will talk about our marriage", said he.

He asked Sheela where she was going and added that they would talk about their marriage.

- (8) Sita said to Ram, "No, No, I can't play with you. My father has forbidden me to play with you."

Sita told Ram that she could not play with him as her father had forbidden her to play with him.

(J) **Indirect Commands** : कई वाक्य ऐसे होते हैं जो देखने में Negative या Interrogative लगते हैं लेकिन उनका अर्थ, आशय एक सलाह (advice), निमंत्रण (Invitation) या प्रार्थना (request) का होता है। इस तरह के वाक्य **Indirect Commands** कहलाते हैं। *Look at the following sentences :*

- (1) She said, "If I were you, I'd stop smoking."
She advised me to stop smoking.
- (2) He said, "Why don't you change your clothes ?"
He advised me to change my clothes.
- (3) "Would / could you show me your ticket, please ?" the TC said.
The TC asked me to show him my ticket.
- (4) The receptionist said, "If you'd just sign the application form".
The receptionist asked him to sign the application form.
- (5) His wife said, "Please, please don't take risk".
His wife begged / implored him not to take risk.
- (6) Mrs Jacob said, "Don't forget to order the whisky".
Mrs Jacob reminded him to order the whisky.



Direct से Indirect में परिवर्तित करते समय जैसा पूर्व में भी बताया गया है, वाक्य का आशय नहीं बदलता है। अतः इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को उनके आशय के अनुसार Indirect में परिवर्तित करें। *These are very important sentences from examination point of view.*

(K) कई वाक्यों में **Reporting verb** के बाद कोई **Object** नहीं आता है। ऐसे वाक्यों को जब Indirect में परिवर्तन करना हो, तो **Reported Speech** में प्रयुक्त **Second person** के **Pronoun/adjectives** को बदलने में छात्रों को परेशानी महसूस होती है। ऐसी स्थिति में वाक्य के आशय को ध्यान में रखते हुए आप अपनी इच्छा से कोई भी उपयुक्त **Object** चुन सकते हैं एवं उसे **Reporting verb** के बाद लगा दें। जैसे :

- | | | |
|---------------------|--|----|
| (i) Direct | : Sita said, "I am waiting for you." | |
| Indirect | : Sita told me that she was waiting for me. | Or |
| | : Sita told him that she was waiting for him. | |
| (ii) Direct | : My mother said, "You should take proper diet." | |
| Indirect | : My mother told me that I should take proper diet. | |
| (iii) Direct | : He said, "I do not like to talk to any of you." | |
| Indirect | : He told us that he did not like to talk any of us. | Or |
| | : He told them that he did not like to talk to any of them. | |
| (iv) Direct | : The teacher said, "You should learn the lessons well." | |
| Indirect | : The teacher told the students/me/him/her that they / I / he / she should learn the lessons well. | |

वाक्य के भाव/आशय के अनुसार **Object** का चयन करना चाहिए।

Some Specific Points of about Reported Speech

(A) यदि **Past Continuous** द्वारा कोई **Completed Action** नहीं बताया जाता है, तो यह **Indirect Speech** में उसका **Tense** अपरिवर्तित रहता है। जैसे :

- (1) He said, "When I saw her, she was playing football."
He said that when he saw her, she was playing football.
- (2) She said, "When I saw them, they were swimming in the river."
She said that when she saw them, they were swimming in the river.

(3) He said, "When we were living in London we often saw Mr. James."

He said that when they were living in London they often saw/had often seen Mr. James.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में main verb को change किया भी जा सकता है एवं नहीं भी किया जा सकता है।

(B) यदि Past के वाक्य में कोई इस तरह का तथ्य है जो परिवर्तित नहीं हुआ है तो उसका Tense भी अपरिवर्तित रहता है। जैसे :

(1) He said, "I decided not to purchase the house, because it was near the railway track."

He said that he had decided not to purchase the house because it was near the railway track.

(2) They said, "We decided not to buy the house as it was on the main road."

They said that they had decided not to buy the house as it was on the main road.

वाक्य (1) एवं (2) में जो 'fact' अपरिवर्तित है (it was near the railway track; it was on the main road) उनके Tense में Indirect speech में भी कोई परिवर्तन नहीं हुआ है।

(C) Wish एवं It is time के बाद प्रयुक्त Unreal Past Tense के वाक्यों के Tense में Indirect speech में Change करते समय परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे :

(1) He said, "I wish I didn't have to take examination."

He said he wished he didn't have to take examination.

(2) "It is time we began planning for our examinations", he said.

He said that it was time they began planning for their examinations.

(D) ऐसे वाक्य जिनमें I/he/she/we/they/ had better जैसा Structure मिलता है, उसमें Indirect Speech में परिवर्तित करते समय Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। लेकिन You had better वाले वाक्यों में Advised + Object का प्रयोग किया जाता है। (यदि Advised का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाये तो इसमें भी कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।) जैसे :

(1) "The children had better go to bed early", said Ram.

Ram said that the children had better go to bed early.

(2) Sita said, "You had better given up smoking."

Sita said that I had better given up smoking.

Sita advised me to give up smoking.

(3) She said, "The old had better go for a walk daily."

She said that the old had better go for a walk daily.

(4) He said, "You had better not drink the tea."

He advised me not to drink the tea.

He said that I had better not drink the tea.

(E) निम्न प्रकार के Conditional Sentences को Indirect में परिवर्तित करते समय If, When इत्यादि शब्दों से पूर्व that का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(1) He said, "If I had a permit I could get this job."

He said that if he had a permit he could get that job.

(2) He said, "If she had come to me, I would have helped her."

He said that if she had come to him, he would have helped her.

(3) He said, "If I had the tools I could mend the car."

He said that if he had the tools he could mend the car.

(4) She boasted, "I could read when I was there."

She boasted that she could read when she was there.

(5) He said, "When I was a boy, I could stay up as long as I liked."

He said that when he was a boy he could stay up as long as he liked.



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01

Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :

- (1) He says, "Ram is a good player."
- (2) Rita says, "Kishore sang a song."
- (3) You will say, "Ganesh works hard."
- (4) Kali will say, "Mira will swim in the river."
- (5) He said, "Kalu reads well."
- (6) He said, "The birds are flying."
- (7) The servant said, "The guest has arrived."
- (8) The washerman said, "It has been raining since morning".
- (9) The boys said, "The teacher did not come."
- (10) I said, "Ganesh was playing."
- (11) You said, "Kalu can lift the box."
- (12) The teacher said, "Mala may go."
- (13) I said, "I shall work hard."
- (14) He said, "The boys will write lessons."

02

Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :

- (1) Sheela said, "The earth moves round the sun."
- (2) The saint said, "Man is mortal."
- (3) The teacher said, "India became free in 1947."
- (4) Mohan said, "Babar won the first battle of Panipat."
- (5) Mohan said, "Two and two make four."
- (6) Sheela said, "Truth always triumphs".
- (7) He said, "Mohan could solve the sum."
- (8) She said, "It might happen."

03

Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) I said, "I am happy." | (2) You said, "We are learning our lesson." |
| (3) He said, "I am not to blame." | (4) She said, "I do not care for him." |
| (5) They said, "We trust in God." | (6) I said to him, "You are always late." |
| (7) You said to me, "You may go." | (8) Sheela said to us, "You must work hard." |
| (9) Ram said to me, "Sita does not like meat." | (10) I said to him, "He must not tell lies." |
| (11) He said to me, "Let us go for a walk." | (12) You said to me, "Let us play now." |
| (13) She said, "I am going now." | (14) I said, "I know this man." |
| (15) They said, "We are leaving tonight." | (16) He said to me, "I shall see you tomorrow." |
| (17) She said, "My uncle came yesterday." | (18) I said, "I bought the book last week." |
| (19) The mother said, "It will rain next month." | (20) She said, "I went to Jaipur a week ago." |

04

Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :

- (1) He said to me, "You have made a mistake."
- (2) The students said, "We shall play a match tomorrow."
- (3) Harish said, "I am going now, mother."
- (4) The teacher said, "Honesty is the best policy."
- (5) He said to his parents, "I have done my best and can do no more."
- (6) The dying man said, "My sons, I am leaving you a treasure buried in my fields."
- (7) The Principal said, "Harish is very intelligent."
- (8) The Principal said, "Tomorrow will be a holiday."
- (9) The Prime Minister said, "National integrity will be preserved at all costs."
- (10) The Minister said, "The prices have started falling."
- (11) He said to me, "My father went to Mumbai last week."
- (12) I said to her, "I may come tomorrow."
- (13) The officer said to him, "You will be dismissed if you do not attend the office in time."
- (14) The doctor said to him, "You have fallen ill because you over-ate yesterday."

05

Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :

- (1) He said to me, "Do you play hockey?"
- (2) I said to her, "Are you leaving tonight?"
- (3) He said to his friend, "Will you lend me fifty rupees?"
- (4) He said to his son, "Have you seen the Tajmahal?"
- (5) "Haven't you got a television set?" he asked me.
- (6) The servant said, "Shall I lay the table now?"
- (7) "Shall I ever get married?" she said.
- (8) Ram said to me, "What are you doing?"
- (9) She said to the stranger, "Who are you?"
- (10) The teacher said to me, "Which is your pen?"

06

Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :

- (1) His father said to him, "Why did you misbehave?"
- (2) I said to Sita, "Where are you going?"
- (3) Ram's mother said to him, "How have you failed in the examination?"
- (4) The madam said to the boys, "Whose book is this?"
- (5) She said to me, "How many boys are there in your school?"
- (6) My father said to me, "Are you feeling well?"
- (7) He said to her, "Can you lend me your umbrella?"
- (8) I said to Harish, "Do you want to settle at Kanpur?"
- (9) I said to the servant, "Where is my camera?"
- (10) The teacher said to Ganesh, "Why are you not taking the examination?"

07***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- (1) The teacher said, "Never make mischief again."
- (2) I said to Sita, "Can you keep it for me till tomorrow?"
- (3) She told Ram. "Leave it with me ,but don't come back."
- (4) The retailer said, "Where can you find such variety of clothes?"
- (5) "My advice," said our madam, "is that you should go home now."
- (6) The girl shouted, "What a funny man you are !"
- (7) The old man said to his son, "What have you learnt at school?"
- (8) The assistant said, "Sir, give me the list of the dealers."
- (9) Sohni said, "Rajesh, who has taken away my bike?"
- (10) The child said to his mother, "Are you going to office today?"

08***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- (1) "Good morning, sir", said Shyam to his teacher.
- (2) "Thank you child, for showing me the way to the hospital," said the old lady.
- (3) "Wish you a happy journey," said my wife.
- (4) "Hello, Ramesh, how are you doing these days?" said Ashok.
- (5) "Alas!," she said, "We have lost badly in the match."
- (6) "May you live long, my son !" said my mother.
- (7) "This book is full of errors," shouted Mr. Janardhan.
- (8) The thief said to the judge, "Please pardon me, sir."
- (9) The priest said to her, "May God help you!"
- (10) The stranger said, "Good Heavens! What do I see before me !"

09***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) He said, " Two and two make four." | (2) She said, " I saw a tiger here." |
| (3) Maneesh said, "I may go to Delhi tomorrow." | (4) He asked me, " Where has he gone?" |
| (5) Sita said to me, "Is it still raining". | (6) He said to me, "When will she come?" |
| (7) She said to me, "Is Raju your friend?" | (8) She said to me, "Have you a car?" |
| (9) She said, "Do they play chess?" | (10) Rahim said, "Who are they?" |

10***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- (1) Kanika said to Suresh, "Is the tea ready?"
- (2) She said to me, " Is it my book?"
- (3) Tarmesh said to me, "Will you keep shut?."
- (4) Chinkoo said to him, "Get out?"
- (5) The teacher said, "Hurry up, students ."
- (6) He said to the President, "Please give me one chance."
- (7) She said to him, "Please cooperate me."
- (8) The teacher said to the girls, "Keep away from the wall!"
- (9) She said, "What a pitiful scene?"
- (10) He said, "Hurrah! I am the first."

11***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- (1) The queen said, "O, I were young again !"
- (2) The Principal said, "Well done! my boys."
- (3) He said, "God save the King."
- (4) The mother said, "Long live my son!"
- (5) She said to me, "Do have some drinks."
- (6) Rahul said to him, "Will you go to Jaipur?"
- (7) The boy said, "Sir, may I come in?"
- (8) Hari said to Rahim, "You must obey your parents."
- (9) He said, "I must go to Jaipur next week."
- (10) She said, "You need not talk to me."

12***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) He said to me, "Let us go to hospital." | (2) She said, "Let them play." |
| (3) Ramesh said, "Sarla will not dance." | (4) The professor said, "Alas! I am undone." |
| (5) He said to me, "Do you know who is there?" | (6) He said, "Thanks for reminding me." |
| (7) He said, "Hello, what are you doing? " | (8) She said, "Congratulations." |
| (9) She said, "Farewell my dear friends ." | (10) He said to her, "Good morning !" |

13***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) He says, "Mohan will write a letter." | |
| (2) He says to me, "I will go to Mumbai tomorrow." | |
| (3) He said to me, "I am reading a book." | |
| (4) Ram said to me, "I can teach you." | |
| (5) He said, "Mohan has been living here since 2000." | |
| (6) He said, "The sun rises in the east." | (7) He said, "The moon revolves round the earth". |
| (8) I said to her, "I wrote a letter". | (9) I said to her, "Have you learnt your lesson?" |
| (10) Ram says to me, "You are smart." | (11) He said to me, "Are you going to Jaipur?" |
| (12) I said to him, "Who teaches you English?" | (13) I said to Harsh, "Please help me." |
| (14) Mohan said to me, " Do not tell a lie." | (15) She said, "Good bye, Ramesh." |

14***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) My mother said to me, "May you live long!" | (2) I said to Ram, "Let me go there." |
| (3) He said, "If I were the King!" | (4) He said, "How intelligent Ravi is!" |
| (5) She said, "Keep this room open." | (6) The captain said, "Well done! my boys." |
| (7) Ram said, "You need not talk to me." | (8) He said, "What a beautiful picture?" |
| (9) He said, "I must go to Jaipur next month." | (10) The teacher said, "Hurry up." |
| (11) She said to me, "Is it still drizzling?" | (12) She said, "I saw a lion here." |
| (13) He said to me, "What is your father's name?" | (14) Ram said to the servant, "Clean up the house." |
| (15) She said, "How old are you?" | |

15***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) He says, "I am ill." | (2) Mohan said to me, "I am doing my work." |
| (3) I said to him, "I went there on Tuesday." | (4) The teacher said to us, "The earth is round." |
| (5) The boy said, "I saw him while I was running." | (6) She said, "You need not wait." |
| (7) I said to him, "Your brother has passed." | (8) I said to him, "Where do you live?" |
| (9) He said to me, "Work hard if you want to pass." | (10) He said to me, "Do not go there?" |
| (11) He said, "What a pitiful scene?" | (12) She said, "Where is the hospital?" |
| (13) The big man said, "Quite right." | (14) "We'll wait for you if you're late", they said. |
| (15) Ram asked Mohan, "What is the time?" | (16) The saint said to her, "May God help you!" |
| (17) "Wish you a happy journey", said Harsh. | (18) The boy said, "Hurrah! we have won the match." |
| (19) Sarla said, "Alas! I have failed." | (20) My mother said to me, "Don't jump on my bed." |

16***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- (1) Sumit said, "Father, I want to go abroad after I finish my studies here." [RAS]
- (2) I said to Sumit, "Why do you want to go abroad? Where actually do you want to go?"
- (3) "Don't go home yet," I told my colleague, "Remember you promised to finish your work before leaving." [RAS]
- (4) "Please listen to me," he answered, "I must go now because my son is very ill." [RAS]
- (5) "What a relief to know that the girl has passed!" I exclaimed, "now she can get a job."
- (6) The station master said to me, "You are very late; it is one full hour since the train left." [Inspectors of Income-tax]
- (7) Nitin said to me, "Why don't you come with us? Why do you want to be so unsocial?"
- (8) The gang leader shouted, "Keep together and run, the police are after us."
- (9) I said to my companions, "Let them not come with us if they don't want to, let's not wait for them any longer." [RAS]
- (10) "What a pleasant surprise!" I exclaimed on seeing John in the room, "I never expected to find you here."
- (11) I said to Harish, "The man who came to meet you asked if we could see his boss tomorrow."
- (12) He said to his Secretary, "Why don't you carry out orders exactly? Remember if you don't, you will be punished."
- (13) I said to the boy, "You have no ticket, get out before you are driven out."
- (14) The lecturer paused and said, "Those who are tired of listening to me can go. I shall not mind it."
- (15) They said, "How very awkward! What shall we say to him?" [RAS]

17***Change the following sentences into Indirect Narration :***

- (1) Madhur said to his sister, "Before I go to Delhi, I shall meet Sushila." [Assistants Grade]
- (2) Govind said to Mohit, "Do not come here again or you will get a beating."
- (3) John said to James, "Have you come here just to see me or are there some other reasons?"
- (4) Abdul said, "What a lovely morning for tennis!" [Assistants Grade]
- (5) The teacher said to the boy, "Since it is so warm let us go swimming." [Assistants Grade]
- (6) They said, "Mother, we are not hungry; we shall eat later." [Assistants Grade]
- (7) He said angrily to his brother, "Why don't you do as you are told?"
- (8) I said to the visitor, "Don't sit on that chair, it is broken."
- (9) My little brother said, "I wish it rains hard, so I don't have to go to school."

- (10) "How steep the path is !" they said, "we are quite tired." [Income-tax Inspectors]
 (11) "Neither a borrower, nor a lender be," said the father to son. [Income-tax Inspectors]
 (12) "And remember always that true education means the training of the mind," said the V.C. addressing students. [Income-tax Inspectors]
 (13) The teacher said to his students, "Even in your life and conversation prove worthy of your glorious Alma Mater." [Income-tax Inspectors]
 (14) The son said to his father reverently, "Do you expect me to have even done this sort of a mean thing." [Income-tax Inspectors]
 (15) "Don't hang upon me, young man, I do not like flatterers", said the officer to his secretary.

18

Choose the best alternative to complete the sentences given below :

- (1) Please tell me :
 (a) where is the bus stop (b) where the bus stop be
 (c) where stops the bus (d) where the bus stop is
- (2) I told him :
 (a) what the homework was (b) what was the homework
 (c) what was to be the homework (d) what is the homework
- (3) I think :
 (a) will be the plane on time (b) the plane will be on time
 (c) the plane to be on time (d) it will be on time the plane
- (4) I didn't know :
 (a) what he mean (b) what did he mean
 (c) what did he meant (d) what he meant
- (5) He said :
 (a) that the weather colder than usual (b) the weather be colder than usual
 (c) the weather was colder than usual (d) the weather it is colder than usual
- (6) I think :
 (a) today it is Wednesday (b) that is today Wednesday
 (c) today is Wednesday (d) today be Wednesday
- (7) He said :
 (a) that yesterday he gone downtown (b) he goes downtown yesterday
 (c) he go downtown yesterday (d) he went downtown yesterday
- (8) I believe :
 (a) him he is right (b) he is right
 (c) he be right (d) that he right
- (9) She said :
 (a) that she was hungry (b) she hungry
 (c) she be hungry (d) her was hungry
- (10) He told us :
 (a) that he enjoy the movie (b) he enjoyed the movie
 (c) he be enjoying the movie (d) that enjoyed the movie

**SOLUTIONS****TEST YOURSELF Exercises****Solution TYE 01**

- (1) He says that Ram is a good player.
- (2) Rita says that Kishore sang a song.
- (3) You will say that Ganesh works hard.
- (4) Kali will say that Mira will swim in the river.
- (5) He said that Kalu read well.
- (6) He said that the birds were flying.
- (7) The servant said that the guest had arrived.
- (8) The washerman said that it had been raining since morning.
- (9) The boys said that the teacher had not come.
- (10) I said that Ganesh had been playing.
- (11) You said that Kalu could lift the box.
- (12) The teacher said that Mala might go.
- (13) I said that I should work hard.
- (14) He said that the boys would write lessons.

Solution TYE 02

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Sheela said that the earth moves round the sun. | (2) The saint said that man is mortal. |
| (3) The teacher said that India became free in 1947. | (4) Mohan said that Babar won the first battle of Panipat. |
| (5) Mohan said that two and two make four. | (6) Sheela said that truth always triumphs. |
| (7) He said that Mohan could solve the sum. | (8) She said that it might happen. |

Solution TYE 03

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) I said that I was happy. | (2) You said that you were learning your lesson. |
| (3) He said that he was not to blame. | (4) She said that she did not care for him. |
| (5) They said that they trusted in God. | |
| (6) I told him that he was always late. | |
| (7) You told me that I might go. | |
| (8) Sheela told us that we must work hard. | |
| (9) Ram told me that Sita did not like meat. | |
| (10) I told him that he must not tell lies. | |
| (11) He proposed to me that we should go for a walk. | |
| (12) You proposed to me that we should play now. | |
| (13) She said that she was going then. | |
| (14) I said that I knew that man. | |
| (15) They said that they were leaving that night. | |
| (16) He told me that he would see me the next day. | |
| (17) She said that her uncle had come the previous day. | |
| (18) I said that I had bought the book the previous week. | |
| (19) The mother said that it would rain the following month. | |
| (20) She said that she had gone to Jaipur a week before. | |

Solution TYE 04

- (1) He told me that I had made a mistake.
- (2) The students said that they would play a match the next day.
- (3) Harish told his mother that he was going then.
- (4) The teacher said that honesty is the best policy.
- (5) He told his parents that he had done his best and could do no more.
- (6) The dying man told his sons that he was leaving them a treasure buried in his fields.
- (7) The Principal remarked that Harish was very intelligent.
- (8) The Principal announced that the next day would be a holiday.
- (9) The Prime Minister declared that national integrity would be preserved at all costs.
- (10) The Minister informed that the prices had started falling.
- (11) He told me that his father had gone to Mumbai the previous week.
- (12) I told her that I might come the next day.
- (13) The officer warned him that he would be dismissed if he did not attend the office in time.
- (14) The doctor apprised him that he had fallen ill because he had over-eaten the previous day.

Solution TYE 05

- (1) He asked me if I played hockey.
- (2) I asked her if she was leaving that night.
- (3) He asked his friend if he would lend him fifty rupees.
- (4) He asked his son if he had seen the Tajmahal.
- (5) He asked me if I hadn't got a television set.
- (6) The servant wanted to know if he should lay the table then.
- (7) She wondered if she would ever get married.
- (8) Ram asked me what I was doing.
- (9) She asked the stranger who he was.
- (10) The teacher asked me which my pen was.

Solution TYE 06

- (1) His father asked him why he had misbehaved.
- (2) I asked Sita where she was going.
- (3) Ram's mother asked him how he had fared in the examination.
- (4) The madam asked the boys whose book that was.
- (5) She asked me how many boys there were in my school.
- (6) My father asked me whether I was feeling well.
- (7) He enquired of her if she could lend him her umbrella.
- (8) I enquire of Harish whether he wanted to settle at Kanpur.
- (9) I asked the servant where my camera was.
- (10) The teacher asked Ganesh why he was not taking the examination.

Solution TYE 07

- (1) The teacher warned me never to make mischief again.
- (2) I asked Sita if she could keep it for me till the next day.
- (3) She asked Ram to leave it with her, but not to come back.
- (4) The retailer asked me where I could find such variety of clothes.
- (5) Our madam advised us to go home then.
- (6) The girl exclaimed that I was a very funny man.
- (7) The old man asked his son what he (the son) had learnt at school.
- (8) The assistant requested him to give the list of the dealers.
- (9) Sohni asked Rajesh who had taken away her (Sohni's) bike.
- (10) The child asked his mother whether she was going to office that day.

Solution TYE 08

- (1) Shyam respectfully wished his teacher good morning.
- (2) The old lady thanked the child for showing her the way to the hospital.
- (3) My wife wished me a happy journey.
- (4) Ashok greeted Ramesh and asked how he was doing those days.
- (5) She exclaimed with sorrow that they had lost badly in the match.
- (6) My mother wished me that I might live long.
- (7) Mr. Janardhan shouted that, that book was full of errors.
- (8) The thief respectfully requested the judge to pardon him.
- (9) The priest blessed her that God might help her.
- (10) The stranger exclaimed with surprise what he saw before him.

Solution TYE 09

- (1) He said that two and two make four.
- (2) She said that she had seen a tiger there.
- (3) Maneesh said that he might go to Delhi the next day.
- (4) He asked me where he had gone.
- (5) Sita asked me if it was raining till then.
- (6) He asked me when she would come.
- (7) She asked me if Raju was my friend.
- (8) She asked me if I had a car.
- (9) She asked me if they played chess.
- (10) Rahim asked who they were.

Solution TYE 10

- (1) Kanika asked Suresh if the tea was ready.
- (2) She asked me whether it was her book.
- (3) Tarmesh asked me if I would keep shut.
- (4) Chinkoo ordered him to get out.
- (5) The teacher asked the students to hurry up.
- (6) He requested the President to give him one chance.
- (7) She requested him to cooperate her.
- (8) The teacher instructed the girls to keep away from the wall.
- (9) She exclaimed that it was a pitiful scene.
- (10) He exclaimed with joy that he was the first.

Solution TYE 11

- (1) The queen eagerly wished that she were young again.
- (2) The Principal exclaimed with applause that the boys had done well.
- (3) He prayed that God might save the king.
- (4) The mother wished that his son should live long.
- (5) She requested me to have some drinks.
- (6) Rahul asked him if he would go to Jaipur .
- (7) The boy respectfully asked whether he could come in.
- (8) Hari told Rahim that he must obey his parents.
- (9) He said that he had to go to Jaipur the following week.
- (10) She said that I need not talk to her.

Solution TYE 12

- (1) He suggested to me that we should go to the hospital.
- (2) She advised that they should be allowed to play.
- (3) Ramesh said that Sarla would not dance.
- (4) The professor exclaimed with sorrow that he was undone.
- (5) He asked me if I knew who was there.
- (6) He thanked me for reminding him.
- (7) He greeted and asked me what I was doing.
- (8) She congratulated me.
- (9) She bade farewell to his friends.
- (10) He wished her good morning.

Solution TYE 13

- (1) He says that Mohan will write a letter.
- (2) He tells me that he will go to Mumbai tomorrow.
- (3) He told me that he was reading a book.
- (4) Ram told me that he could teach me.
- (5) He said that Mohan had been living there since 2000.
- (6) He said that the sun rises in the east.
- (7) He said that the moon revolves round the earth.
- (8) I told her that I had written a letter.
- (9) I asked her whether she had learnt her lesson.
- (10) Ram tells me that I am smart.
- (11) He asked me if I was going to Jaipur.
- (12) I asked him who taught him English.
- (13) I requested Harsh to help me.
- (14) Mohan advised me not to tell a lie.
- (15) She bade Ramesh good bye.

Solution TYE 14

- (1) My mother prayed that I might live long.
- (2) I requested Ram to let me go there.
- (3) He wished that he would be the king.
- (4) He exclaimed that Ravi was very intelligent.
- (5) She ordered to keep that room open.
- (6) The captain shouted with applause that his boys had done well.
- (7) Ram said that I need not talk to him.
- (8) He exclaimed that it was a beautiful picture.
- (9) He said that he would have to go to Jaipur the following month.
- (10) The teacher asked to hurry up.
- (11) She asked me if it was drizzling till then.
- (12) She said that she had seen a lion there.
- (13) He asked me what my father's name is.
- (14) Ram ordered the servant to clean up the house.
- (15) She asked me how old I was.

Solution TYE 15

- (1) He says that he is ill.
- (2) Mohan told me that he was doing his work.
- (3) I told him that I had gone there on Tuesday.
- (4) The teacher told us that the earth is round.
- (5) The boy said that he had seen him while he (the boy) was running.
- (6) She said that I need not wait.
- (7) I told him that his brother had passed.
- (8) I asked him where he lived.
- (9) He advised me to work hard if I wanted to pass.
- (10) He forbade me to go there.
- (11) He exclaimed that it was a pitiful scene.
- (12) She asked where the hospital was.
- (13) The big man said that it was quite right.
- (14) They told me that they would wait for me if I was late.
- (15) Ram asked Mohan what the time was.
- (16) The saint wished that God might help her.
- (17) Harsh wished me a happy journey.
- (18) The boy exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.
- (19) Sarla exclaimed with sorrow that she had failed.
- (20) My mother asked me not to jump on her bed.

Solution TYE 16

- (1) Sumit told his father that he wanted to go abroad after he finished his studies here.
- (2) I asked Sumit why he wanted to go abroad and where he actually wanted to go.
- (3) I requested my colleague not to go home yet and to remember that he promised to finish his work before leaving.
- (4) He answered politely to listen to him and that he must go then because his son was very ill.
- (5) I exclaimed with joy that it was a great relief to know that the girl had passed and then she would get a job.
- (6) The station master told me that I was very late and it was one full hour since the train had left.
- (7) Nitin asked me why I did not come with them. He further asked why I wanted to be so unsocial.
- (8) The gang leader shouted to his followers to keep together and run because the police were after them.
- (9) I told the companions that they need not come with them if they didn't want to. I suggested that they (the companions) should not wait for them any longer.
- (10) I exclaimed on seeing John in the room that it was a very pleasant surprise, and I had never accepted to find him there.
- (11) I told Harish that the man who had come to meet him, had asked if we would see his boss the following day.
- (12) He asked his secretary why he did not carry out orders exactly, he warned him that if he did not (carry out orders) he would be punished.
- (13) I ordered the boy to get out (as he had no ticket) before he was driven out.
- (14) The lecturer paused and said that those who were tired of listening to him could go and that he would not mind that.
- (15) They cried out with contempt what they would tell him (by way of explanation), exclaimed that it was very awkward.

Solution TYE 17

- (1) Madhur told his sister that before going to Delhi, he would meet Sushila.
- (2) Govind told Mohit not to come there again or he would get a beating.
- (3) John asked James if he had come there just to see him or there were some other reasons.
- (4) Abdul exclaimed that was a lovely morning for tennis.
- (5) The teacher suggested the boys that they should go swimming since it was so warm.
- (6) They told their mother that they were not hungry, they would eat later.
- (7) He angrily asked his brother why he did not do as he was told.
- (8) I cautioned the visitor against sitting on that chair, (as) it was broken.
- (9) My little brother earnestly wished that it (should) rain so hard that he would not have to go to school.
- (10) They exclaimed that the path was very steep and they were quite tired.
- (11) The father advised his son neither to be a borrower, nor to be a lender.
- (12) Addressing the new graduates the Vice-Chancellor exhorted them to remember always that true education means the training of the mind.
- (13) The teacher exhorted his students, ever in their life and conversation, to prove worthy of their glorious Alma Mater.
- (14) The son asked his father respectfully if he expected him to have even done that sort of a mean thing.
- (15) Addressing the Secretary as young man, the officer advised him not to hang upon him as he (the officer) didn't like flatterers.

Solution TYE 18

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------|----------|----------|
| (1) (d), | (2) (a), | (3) (b), | (4) (d), |
| (5) (c), | (6) (c), | (7) (d), | (8) (b), |
| (9) (a), | (10) (b). | | |

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

अभी तक आपने जिन वाक्यों का अध्ययन किया है उनमें कर्ता द्वारा कार्य किया जाता है। कर्ता Active होता है। जैसे:

- (a) वह कार ठीक कर रहा है। He is repairing the car.
 (b) वे घर की सफाई कर रहे हैं। They are cleaning the house.

ये वाक्य Active voice के हैं, इनमें (कर्ता) (Subject) 'वह', 'वे' हैं जो कार्य करते हैं, Active हैं लेकिन ध्यान दें यदि हमें निम्न प्रकार के वाक्य बनाने हैं। जैसे:

- (a) कार ठीक की जा रही है या कार उसके द्वारा ठीक की जा रही है।
 (b) घर की सफाई की जा रही है। या घर की सफाई मजदूरों द्वारा की जा रही है।

ऐसे वाक्य जिनमें कर्ता दिखाई नहीं देता है या कर्ता (Subject) की जगह कर्म (Object) प्रमुखता पाता है, ऐसे वाक्यों को समझने एवं ऐसे वाक्यों को अंग्रेजी में अनुवादित करने हेतु हमें Passive Voice के नियमों का अध्ययन करना होगा।

Active Voice vs Passive Voice

Voice: The voice of a verb tells whether the subject of the sentence performs or receives the action. In English there are two voices : passive and active.

Active Voice: Active voice वाक्यों में कर्ता (Subject) की प्रमुखता होती है। कर्ता Active होता है। Verb, Active voice में होती है।

In active voice , the subject performs the action expressed by the verb.

Passive Voice: Passive voice में कर्ता (subject) की प्रमुखता नहीं होती बल्कि Object की प्रमुखता होती है, वाक्य Object से शुरू होता है एवं Verb, Passive में होती है।

In passive voice, the subject receives the action expressed by the verb.

निम्न वाक्य को देखें:

- (1) He sings a song. *Active voice*

यहाँ He (subject), sings (verb) a song (object) को व्यक्त करता है।

यह वाक्य (1) Active voice में है। वाक्य का Subject He, Active है, कार्य करता है। Verb, sings Active voice में है।

- (2) A song is sung by him. *Passive voice*

यह वाक्य (1) का Passive है। इस वाक्य में A song, subject [Object of Sentence (1)] है तथा Verb, sung, [वाक्य 1 की verb की III form] है तथा him, object [वाक्य (1) के Subject He का objective form है।

इस वाक्य में Object [वाक्य (1)] प्रमुख है तथा Verb Passive में है एवं Subject [वाक्य (1)] को प्रमुखता नहीं दी गई है एवं यह Object की तरह वाक्य में प्रयुक्त हुआ है।



(a) कोई वाक्य Active है या Passive यह Verb की form पर निर्भर करता है। यदि Verb, Active है तो वाक्य Active voice में है यदि Verb, Passive है तो वाक्य Passive voice में है।

(b) **Active Verb:** A verb is in Active voice when its form shows (as in sentence 1) that the subject does some work or subject is Active.

(c) **Passive Verb :** A verb is in Passive voice when its form shows (as in sentence 2) that something is done to the subject (of sentence 1) or subject is not Active, but Passive.

Why and When to Use Passive Structure?

(1) जब Subject का पता नहीं हो या यह बताने की आवश्यकता नहीं हो कि कार्य किसने किया। जैसे:

- (a) This mosque was built years ago.
- (b) The mirror was broken yesterday.
- (c) The shop was looted and three persons were arrested.
- (d) A bomb was exploded.

(2) जब Object को महत्व दिया जाना आवश्यक हो। जैसे:

- (a) The letter was written by Mr. Ganesh.
- (b) The white tiger was killed by the hunter.

(3) Scientific and technical writings में Passive voice का प्रयोग किया जाता है क्योंकि वहाँ कर्ता का महत्व नहीं होता या महत्व invention को दिया जाना हो।

- (a) Hydro Chloric Acid is produced when Hydrogen and Chlorine are mixed.
- (b) Telephone was invented by Grahambell.

General Rules to Change the Voice

Rule 1 Active Voice से Passive में परिवर्तन करने पर Active का Object, Passive का Subject बन जाता है तथा Active का Subject, Passive में Objective form में बदलकर Object बनता है। जैसे:

I write a letter.

Active Voice

A letter is written by me.

Passive Voice

Rule 2 Passive Voice में Verb III form में प्रयुक्त होती है तथा उससे पहले is / am / are / was / were / been / being का प्रयोग वाक्य के Tense के अनुसार किया जाता है।

Rule 3 Passive के Subject (नए Subject) के अनुसार Verb, Singular या Plural लगानी होती है। यदि Subject— Singular है तो verb—singular एवं यदि नया subject— plural है तो verb भी plural लगती है। जैसे:

She is helping the students.

Active

The students are being helped by her.

Passive

यहाँ plural verb—are —subject—students के अनुसार प्रयुक्त हुई है।

Rule 4 Passive Voice में by का प्रयोग उन वाक्यों में Agent हेतु किया जाता है जहाँ कार्य किसी के द्वारा कराया जाता है। 'by' का प्रयोग verb के बाद एवं agent (object) से पूर्व किया जाता है। कुछ स्थितियों में by , एवं agent का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। इसको आगे समझाया गया है।

Rule 5 Passive Voice में Active Voice का कर्ता निम्न प्रकार से Objective form में बदलता है :

Active Voice	Passive Voice	Active Voice	Passive Voice
I	me	She	her
He	him	They	them
You	you	It	it
We	us	Who	whom

Rule 6 सामान्य रूप से Transitive verb (ऐसी verb जो अपने साथ object लेती है) का ही Passive बनता है। जैसे: Sleep, sit, stand, go, come, laugh etc. का Passive नहीं बनता है लेकिन Intransitive verbs के साथ कोई Preposition लगाया गया हो तो उस स्थिति में इनको भी Passive बनाया जा सकता है।

Active	Passive
(a) They laughed.	No Passive.
(b) They laughed at the teacher.	The teacher was laughed at by them.
(c) None had slept.	No Passive.
(d) None had slept in the bed.	The bed had not been slept in.

Rule 7 Present Perfect Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous एवं Future Perfect Continuous एवं Future Continuous का Passive नहीं बनता है। 12 में से इस प्रकार 8 Tenses का Passive बनता है। Passive बनाते समय Verb का Tense के अनुसार परिवर्तन निम्न प्रकार से होता है :

Tense	Verb (Active)	Verb (Passive)
(1) Simple Present	write / writes	am / is / are written
(2) Simple Past	wrote	was / were written
(3) Simple Future	shall / will write	shall / will be written
(4) Present Continuous	is / am / are writing	is / am / are being written
(5) Past Continuous	was / were writing	was / were being written
(6) Present Perfect	has / have written	has / have been written
(7) Past Perfect	had written	had been written
(8) Future Perfect	will / shall have written	will / shall have been written

उक्त नियमों का ध्यानपूर्वक अध्ययन करें एवं देखें कि किस तरह से Tensewise वाक्यों को Passive में बदला जाता है।

Various Tenses and Change of Voice

Present Tense

(1) **Present Indefinite:** Active Voice में Present Indefinite के वाक्य का structure निम्न प्रकार का होता है :

Subject + Verb-I + Object

He writes a letter.

इसको Passive Voice में बदलने पर :

A letter *is* *written* *by* *him.*
Subject + **is** + **V-III** + **by** + **Object**

इस तरह Passive voice में वाक्य का Structure निम्न होगा:

Subject + is / am / are + V-III + by + Agent (object)

जैसे : **Active**

(a) I love you.

(b) She washes the clothes in the evening.

Passive

You are loved by me.

The clothes are washed by her in the evening.

- (2) **Present Continuous:** Present Continuous में Active वाक्य का Structure निम्न प्रकार का होता है

He is writing a letter. **Subject + is / am / are + verb + ing + Object**

इसको Passive में बदलने पर :

A letter is being written by him.
Subject + is + being + V-III + by + Object. (Subject of Active)

इस तरह Passive में वाक्य का structure होगा।

Subject + is / am / are + being + V-III + by + Agent (Object)

जैसे: **Active**

(a) We are playing football.

(b) She is making tea.

Passive

Football is being played by us.

Tea is being made by her.

- (3) **Present Perfect:** Active Voice में Present Perfect में वाक्य का structure निम्न होता है

Subject + have / has + V-III + Object

I have written a letter.

इसको Passive में बदलने पर :

A letter has been written by me.
Subject + has been + V-III + by + Object.

इस तरह Passive में वाक्य Structure होगा :

Subject + have / has been + V-III + by + Agent (Object)

जैसे: **Active**

(a) He has bought a scooter.

(b) He has repaired the car.

Passive

A scooter has been bought by him.

The car has been repaired by him.

Past Tense

- (1) **Past Indefinite:** Active voice में Past Indefinite वाक्य का structure निम्न होता है:

I wrote a letter. **Subject + V-II + Object.**

Passive में बदलने पर

A letter was written by him.
Subject + was + V-II + by + Object. (Subject of Active)

इस तरह Passive वाक्य का Structure होगा

Subject + was / were + V-III + by + Agent (Object)

जैसे: **Active**

(a) We won the match.

(b) I purchased a pen.

Passive

The match was won by us.

A pen was purchased by me.

- (2) **Past Continuous:** Active Voice में Past Continuous वाक्य का structure निम्न होता है :

Subject + was / were + (verb + ing) + Object

He was writing a letter.

इसे Passive में बदलने पर:

A letter was being written by him.
Subject + was + being + V-III + by + Object

इस तरह Passive का structure होगा।

Subject + was / were + being + V- III + by + Agent (Object)

जैसे: **Active**

- (a) Ram was driving a car.
 (b) They were flying the kites.

Passive

- A car was being driven by Ram.
 The kites were being flown by them.

(3) **Past Perfect:** Active voice में Past Perfect वाक्य का structure निम्न होता है**Subject + had + V-III + Object**

He had written a letter.

इसे Passive में बदलने पर:

A letter had been written by him.

इस तरह Passive में वाक्य का structure होगा

Subject + had been + V-III + by + (Agent) Objectजैसे: **Active**

- (a) He had killed a dog.
 (b) They had completed the project.

Passive

- A dog had been killed by him.
 The project had been completed by them.

Future Tense

(1) **Future Indefinite:** Active Voice में Future Indefinite में वाक्य का structure निम्न होता है :**Subject + shall / will + V-I + Object**

I shall write a letter.

इसे Passive में बदलने पर:

A letter will be written by me.

Subject + will be + V-III + by + Object (Subject of Active)

इस तरह Passive में वाक्य का structure होगा

Subject + will / shall be + V-III + by + (Agent) Objectजैसे: **Active**

- (a) He will give you a gift.
 (b) He will phone you.

Passive

- A gift will be given to you by him.
 You will be phoned by him.

(2) **Future Perfect:** Active Voice में Future Perfect में वाक्य का structure निम्न होता है:**Subject + will / shall have + V-III + Object.**

I shall have bought a pen.

इसे Passive में बदलने पर :

A pen will have been bought by me.

Subject + will have been + V-III + by + Agent

इस तरह Passive में वाक्य का structure होगा

Subject + will / shall have been + V-III + by + Agent (Object)जैसे: **Active**

- (a) She will have written a thesis.
 (b) Ramesh will have completed the project.

Passive

- A thesis will have been written by her.
 The project will have been completed by Ramesh.

इस प्रकार आपने सभी 8 Tenses के Active से Passive में बदलने के नियम एवं Passive Structure की जानकारी कर ली है। अब आप देखें कि Interrogative वाक्यों को Passive में कैसे बदला जाता है?

Passive of Interrogative Sentences

Interrogative Sentences मुख्यतया दो प्रकार के होते हैं:

(1) Yes / No questions.

(2) Wh-questions.

(1) **Yes / No questions:** को निम्न भागों में विभाजित किया जा सकता है:

(a) **Is/am/are से शुरू होने वाले questions:** इस तरह के प्रश्नों में Passive वाक्यों का Structure निम्न होगा :

Is / am / are / + subject + being + V-III + by + agent ?

जैसे:

Active

- (1) Is he writing a letter ?
- (2) Are they ploughing the field?
- (3) Am I catching the thief ?

Passive

- Is a letter being written by him?
Is the field being ploughed by them?
Is the thief being caught by me?

(b) **Do / does से शुरू होने वाले questions:** इस तरह के प्रश्नों में Passive वाक्यों का structure निम्न होगा:

Is / am / are / + subject + V-III + by + agent ?

जैसे:

Active

- (1) Does he need a pen ?
- (2) Do you like the rooms ?
- (3) Do you write a lesson ?

Passive

- Is a pen needed by him ?
Are the rooms liked by you ?
Is a lesson written by you ?

(c) **Did से शुरू होने वाले questions:** इस तरह के प्रश्नों में Passive वाक्यों का structure निम्न होगा:

Was / Were + subject + V-III + by + agent ?

जैसे:

Active

- (1) Did he write a letter?
- (2) Did she help you?
- (3) Did he phone you?

Passive

- Was a letter written by him?
Were you helped by him?
Were you phoned by him?

(d) **Was/were से शुरू होने वाले questions:** इस तरह के प्रश्नों में Passive वाक्यों का structure निम्न होगा :

Was/Were + subject + being + V-III + by + agent ?

जैसे:

Active

- (1) Was she cooking food?
- (2) Were they playing chess?
- (3) Was he washing the clothes?
- (4) Were you serving your parents?

Passive

- Was food being cooked by her?
Was the chess being played by them?
Were the clothes being washed by him?
Were your parents being served by you?

(e) **Have / has / had से शुरू होने वाले questions:** इस तरह के प्रश्नों में Passive वाक्यों का structure निम्न होगा:

Has/Have/Had + subject + been+ V-III + by + agent ?

जैसे:

Active

- (1) Has he written a book?
- (2) Have they played a match?
- (3) Had she written a letter?

Passive

- Has a book been written by him?
Has a match been played by them?
Had a letter been written by her?

(f) **Modal Auxiliary verbs से शुरू होने वाले questions :** इस तरह के प्रश्नों में Passive वाक्यों का structure निम्न होगा:

Modal Auxiliary + Subject + be + V-III + by + agent ?

जैसे:

Active

- (1) Can she control the situation ?
- (2) May he cross the river?
- (3) Should he cut the wood ?
- (4) Will you steal the book ?
- (5) Will they win the match?
- (6) Would you repair the car?

Passive

- Can the situation be controlled by her ?
- May the river be crossed by him?
- Should the wood be cut by him?
- Will the book be stolen by you?
- Will the match be won by them?
- Would the car be repaired by you?

Important : An Easy Way

ऐसे Interrogative sentences जिनका Answer Yes / No में दिया जा सकता है, helping verb से शुरू होते हैं। ऐसे वाक्यों को Passive में बदलने हेतु हमने ऊपर structure भी बताया है एवं solved example भी दिए हैं। इसका बहुत सरल तरीका है कि (1) Interrogative वाक्यों को Assertive में बदलें। (2) अब उस वाक्य का Passive बनाएँ (3) इस Passive वाक्य में प्रयुक्त helping verb को subject पहले लगाएँ एवं प्रश्नवाचक चिन्ह वाक्य के अन्त में लगाएँ। यह Interrogative वाक्य का Passive होगा।

जैसे : Does he write a letter? —(A)

Assertive —

He writes a letter.

Passive —

A letter is written by him.

इसकी helping verb को subject से पहले लगाएँ एवं प्रश्नवाचक चिन्ह वाक्य के अन्त में लगायें।

Is a letter written by him?

यह (A) वाक्य का Passive है। इसी तरह Has he written a letter?

Assertive — He has written a letter.**Passive** — A letter has been written by him. अब Has a letter been written by him?

- (2) **‘Wh’ Words:** ‘Wh’ words जैसे: What, Why, When, Where etc. से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न। ऐसे प्रश्नों का उत्तर Yes / No में नहीं दिया जा सकता है ऐसे प्रश्नों का Passive निम्न प्रकार से बनाया जा सकता है:

सामान्यतया Wh-words, Active वाक्य के शुरू में आते हैं। उसके बाद helping verb आती है। यदि वाक्य से ‘Wh’ word हटाकर देखें तो जो वाक्य बचता है उसका जवाब Yes / No में दिया जा सकता है। इस वाक्य को पूर्व में बताए नियमानुसार Passive में बदलें एवं ‘Wh’ word को इस वाक्य के पहले लगाने से Passive वाक्य बन जाता है। जैसे:

- (1) Why have you broken the mirror? इस वाक्य में से Wh word हटाने पर शेष वाक्य रहता है: **Have you broken the mirror?** इस वाक्य का Passive बनाना हमने सीख लिया है। यह एक Yes/No question sentence है। इसका Passive बनेगा: **Has the mirror been broken by you?**

अब इस वाक्य के शुरू में ‘Wh’ लगाने से यह वाक्य (1) का Passive Voice बन जाएगा।

Why has the mirror been broken by you?

Active

- (1) Why have you broken the mirror?
- (2) Why do you write a letter?
- (3) When will you return my pen?
- (4) Why are you laughing at her?
- (5) Where did he put the things?
- (6) What did he break?
- (7) When do you write the lesson?
- (8) Why does he kick the ball ?
- (9) When do they send the parcel?
- (10) Where did she buy the books?

Passive

- Why has the mirror been broken by you?
- Why is a letter written by you?
- When will my pen be returned by you?
- Why is she being laughed at by you?
- Where were the things put by him?
- What was broken by him?
- When is the lesson written by you?
- Why is the ball kicked by him?
- When is the parcel sent by them?
- Where were the books bought by her?

Who से प्रारम्भ होने वाले Interrogative sentences: इस तरह के वाक्यों में By whom का प्रयोग सामान्यतया वाक्य के शुरू में करके Passive बनाया जाता है। जैसे:

Active

- (1) Who broke this beautiful glass?
- (2) Who solved that problem?
- (3) Who can break this stick?
- (4) Who will help her in difficulty?
- (5) Who wrote the Ramayana?
- (6) Who has deceived you?

Passive

- By whom was this beautiful glass broken?
- By whom was that problem solved?
- By whom can this stick be broken?
- By whom will she be helped in difficulty?
- By whom was the Ramayana written?
- By whom have you been deceived?

Whom से शुरू होने वाले Interrogative sentence: इसमें 'Who' का प्रयोग करके Passive बनाया जाता है। जैसे:

Active

- (1) Whom have you invited?
- (2) Whom has he abused?
- (3) Whom has she reported?

Passive

- Who has been invited by you?
- Who has been abused by him?
- Who has been reported by her?

Passive Without Agent

Passive बनाते समय वाक्य के अन्त में किन्हीं परिस्थितियों में by + Agent का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे जब कर्ता नहीं है या कर्ता का बिना प्रयोग करे भी कार्य चल सकता है या कर्ता understood है। जैसे : यदि Active वाक्य में someone, somebody, nobody, people, इत्यादि कर्ता है।

Active

- (1) People speak English all over the world.
- (2) Police arrested the thieves.
- (3) Someone has stolen my watch.
- (4) We execute all instructions without delay.
- (5) Robbers looted the shop.

Passive

- English is spoken all over the world.
- The thieves were arrested.
- My watch has been stolen.
- All instructions are executed without delay.
- The shop was looted.



"In all passive voice exercises the use of 'by' with an agent must be rigorously suppressed, except in those examples where our interest in the predicate has led us to use the passive voice—we should omit the agent where the agent is vague or unknown."

—W.S. Allen (Living English structure)

Sentences with Modals

- (1) यदि किसी वाक्य में कोई Modal Auxiliary verb का प्रयोग किया गया है तो Helping verb हमेशा be ही लगता है।
- (2) Modal की स्थिति में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। शेष वाक्य का Passive पूर्व निर्धारित नियमानुसार बनाएँ।

Active

- (1) Sita could help him.
- (2) I will write a letter.
- (3) You must write a book.
- (4) She should obey your parents.
- (5) I may purchase a pen.

Passive

- He could be helped by Sita.
- A letter will be written by me.
- A book must be written by you.
- Your parents should be obeyed by her.
- A pen may be purchased by me.

Imperative Sentences

Imperative Sentences ऐसे वाक्य होते हैं जिनमें आदेश (Order), प्रार्थना (Request) या सलाह (Advice, Suggestion) आदि का भाव व्यक्त होता है। ऐसे वाक्य सामान्यतया मुख्य क्रिया (Principal verb) से शुरू होते हैं।

(A) Sentences with 'Order/Command':**Active**

- (1) Shut the window.
- (2) Bring a glass of water.
- (3) Finish this work.
- (4) Switch off the light.
- (5) Inform the police.
- (6) Search the brief case.
- (7) Turn him out.

Passive

- Let the window be shut.
 Let a glass of water be brought.
 Let this work be finished.
 Let the light be switched off.
 Let the police be informed.
 Let the brief case be searched.
 Let him be turned out.

Order / Command वाले Imperative वाक्यों में साधारणतया passive sentences का structure निम्न प्रकार का होता है :

Let + Subject + be + V-III

Active

Passive



कुछ वाक्यों में 'You are ordered' से भी वाक्यों को शुरू किया जाता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|---|---------|
| (1) <i>Get out of this office.</i> | Active |
| <i>You are ordered to get out of this office.</i> | Passive |
| (2) <i>Bring some glasses of water for them.</i> | Active |
| <i>You are ordered to bring some glasses of water for them.</i> | Passive |

इस प्रकार से Passive का structure निम्न होता है: **You are ordered to + V-I + object**

(B) Sentences containing Request:**Active**

- (1) Please open the door.
- (2) Please help that old lady.
- (3) Take this seat, please.
- (4) Please give me a book.
- (5) Do it for me please.
- (6) Please don't disturb me.

Passive

- You are requested to open the door.
 You are requested to help that old lady.
 You are requested to take this seat.
 You are requested to give me a book.
 You are requested to do it for me.
 You are requested not to disturb me.

इस प्रकार के वाक्यों में Passive का structure निम्न प्रकार का होता है:

You are requested to + V-I + object.

(C) Sentences with Suggestion: Suggestion वाले Imperative sentences को passive में बदलते समय should be का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है :**Active**

- (1) Help the disabled.
- (2) Listen to me.
- (3) Help the needy and poor.
- (4) Always speak the truth.
- (5) Love the kids.
- (6) Hear him now.
- (7) Help your dear and near.
- (8) Love your country .

Passive

- The disabled should be helped.
 I should be listened to.
 The needy and poor should be helped.
 The truth should always be spoken.
 The kids should be loved.
 He should be heard now.
 Your dear and near should be helped.
 Your country should be loved.

इस तरह के वाक्यों का passive में structure निम्न प्रकार होता है :

Subject + should be + V-III

(D) Sentences with Advice: जिन वाक्यों में सलाह का भाव होता है उनको Passive में बदलते समय You are advised to का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है :

Active

- (1) Work hard.
- (2) Get up early .
- (3) Do not smoke.
- (4) Be careful.
- (5) Think before you speak.

Passive

- You are advised to work hard.
 You are advised to get up early.
 You are advised not to smoke.
 You are advised to be careful.
 You are advised to think before you speak.

Passive of Infinitive

Active Voice में Infinitive वाले वाक्यों का सामान्यतया Structure निम्न प्रकार होता है :

Subject + is / am / are / was / were/ have / has / had + to + V-I + object

ऐसे वाक्यों का Passive structure निम्न प्रकार होगा :

Subject + is / am / are / was / were / have / has / had + to be + V-III + by + Agent.

Look at the following solved examples:

Active

- (1) I am to finish this work.
- (2) You are to write an essay.
- (3) They are to buy a TV.
- (4) He was to sell this freeze.
- (5) We were to buy a car.
- (6) I am to assist him.
- (7) She has to help him.
- (8) You were to bring him here.
- (9) The students have to write notes.
- (10) Harish had to complete this work.
- (11) Ramesh has to repair this car.
- (12) I have to purchase a pen.
- (13) You have to choose a house.

Passive

- This work is to be finished by me.
 An essay is to be written by you.
 A TV is to be bought by them.
 This freeze was to be sold by him.
 A car was to be bought by us.
 He is to be assisted by me.
 He has to be helped by her.
 He was to be brought here by you.
 Notes have to be written by the students.
 This work had to be completed by Harish.
 This car has to be repaired by Ramesh.
 A pen has to be purchased by me.
 A house has to be chosen by you.

Miscellaneous Structures

(A) It is time to + V-I + noun से शुरू होने वाले वाक्य :

इस तरह के वाक्यों का passive structure होगा

It is time + for + noun + to be + Verb-I Form

Active

- (1) It is time to close the office.
- (2) It is time to supply food.
- (3) It is time to stop writing.
- (4) It is time to give the final warning.

Passive

- It is time for the office to be closed.
 It is time for food to be supplied.
 It time for the writing to be stopped.
 It is time for the final warning to be given.

(B) There से शुरू होने वाले वाक्य :

There + be form of verb + noun + infinitive

Active structure

इस तरह के वाक्यों का Passive structure निम्न होता है :

There + be form of verb + noun + to be + V-III.

Passive structure

Active

- (1) There is a lot of work to complete.
- (2) There are six letters to write.
- (3) There is no time to lose.
- (4) There is no money to donate.
- (5) There is no milk to waste.
- (6) There is no work to do.

Passive

- There is a lot of work to be completed.
 There are six letters to be written.
 There is no time to be lost.
 There is no money to be donated.
 There is no milk to be wasted.
 There is no work to be done.

- (C) **Passive of Verbs Showing, State of Mind or Feelings:** कुछ Verbs ऐसी होती हैं जो कोई action व्यक्त नहीं करती हैं बल्कि मानसिक स्थिति या भाव को व्यक्त करती हैं। इस प्रकार की Verbs के passive form में by का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है बल्कि उपयुक्त Preposition का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

Active

- (1) I know her.
- (2) He annoyed me.
- (3) Her behaviour annoyed him.
- (4) The news surprised all.
- (5) The result amazed me.
- (6) She vexed me.
- (7) Her conduct shocked me.
- (8) He satisfied everybody.
- (9) This magazine has greatly interested me.
- (10) The news pleased her.

Passive

- She is known to me. (Prep.—‘to’)
 I was annoyed with him. (Prep.—‘with’)
 He was annoyed at her behaviour. (Prep.—‘at’)
 All were surprised at the news. (Prep.—‘at’)
 I was amazed at the result. (Prep.—‘at’)
 I was vexed at her. (Prep.—‘at’)
 I was shocked at her conduct. (Prep.—‘at’)
 Everybody was satisfied with him. (Prep.—‘with’)
 I have been greatly interested in this magazine. (Prep.—‘in’)
 She was pleased with the news. (Prep.—‘with’)

इस तरह की कुछ verbs एवं उनके साथ आने वाले preposition निम्न हैं :

Known to, amazed at, annoyed with (some person), annoyed at (something), startled at, vexed at, decorated with, filled with, surprised at, embodied in etc.

- (D) **Passive of Verbs with Appropriate Prepositions:** कुछ verb अपने बाद Prepositions के साथ ही object लेती हैं। ऐसी verbs के साथ passive form में भी preposition उसी तरह से लगा रहता है।

Active

- (1) He laughed at me.
- (2) The police is enquiring into the matter.
- (3) Sita smiled at Ram.
- (4) He looks after his parents.
- (5) Rahim mocked at our class teacher.

Passive

- I was laughed at by him.
 The matter is being enquired into by the police.
 Ram was smiled at by Sita.
 His parents are looked after by him.
 Our class teacher was mocked at by Rahim.

इस तरह की Verbs जो अपने साथ preposition के बाद object लेती हैं निम्न हैं :

Look at, look after, laugh at, smile at, deride at, mock at etc.

- (E) **कुछ Sentences की Active Voice में बनावट निम्न प्रकार की होती है :**

Subject + ask + object + if / whether + clause

इस तरह के वाक्यों में प्रथम भाग को ही passive में बदला जाता है। शेष वाक्य में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे :

Active

- (1) I asked Rani if she went to Jaipur.
- (2) He asked me when I would complete my work.
- (3) They asked me if I knew his address.
- (4) Rajesh asked me when I would return.

Passive

- Rani was asked if she went to Jaipur.
 I was asked when I would complete my work.
 I was asked if I knew his address.
 I was asked by Rajesh when I would return.

इस तरह के वाक्य में प्रथम भाग को ही Passive में बदला जाता है। शेष वाक्य में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं किया जाता है।

(F) **Causative Verbs:** जब एक वाक्य में Causative verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो इस तरह के वाक्य में subject के बाद Causative verb आता है। जैसे:

Active

- (1) I made him polish my shoes.
- (2) He made me sing a song.
- (3) I saw her go.
- (4) I let him go.

Passive

- He was made to polish my shoes.
I was made to sing a song.
She was seen to go.
He was let go.



Let के साथ Passive में भी to का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

- (5) They made him king.
- (6) We elected him monitor.
- (7) I found her crossing the road.
- (8) We saw her sing a song.

- He was made king.
He was elected monitor by us.
She was found crossing the road.
She was seen to sing a song.

(G) कुछ वाक्य में **They believed, People think, People say, We know, Everyone knows** जैसे शब्दों से वाक्य शुरू करके **that he is** से वाक्य पूर्ण होता है। इस प्रकार के वाक्यों का Passive निम्न प्रकार से बन सकता है:

- (1) It was/is believed that..... . (2) He is known / said / believed to be..... .

Look at the following examples:

Active**Passive**

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) They believed that Mr. Shukla was very rich. | It was believed that Mr. Shukla was very rich. |
| (2) We know that some children go wise early. | Mr. Shukla was believed to be very rich. |
| (3) People consider that she is intelligent. | It is known that some children go wise early. |
| (4) People say that he is a thief. | Some children are known to go wise early. |
| (5) Everyone knows that he is a gangster. | She is considered to be intelligent. |
| | It is considered that she is intelligent. |
| | It is said that he is a thief. |
| | He is said to be a thief. |
| | It is known that he is a gangster. |
| | He is known to be a gangster. |

(H) **Double Passive:**

- | | |
|--|---------|
| (1) They looted the shop and took away the money. | Active |
| The shop was looted and the money was taken away. | Passive |
| (2) She wrote the book and got published. | Active |
| The book was written and got published by her. | Passive |
| (3) The police arrested the thieves and sent them to jail. | Active |
| The thieves were arrested and sent to jail. | Passive |

(I) **Verbs with two objects:** जब वाक्य में दो object होते हैं हम जिस object को प्रमुखता देना चाहते हैं उसे subject बनाया जाता है। सामान्यतया व्यक्तियों (Indirect object) को प्रमुखता दी जाती है।

Look at the following examples :

Active**Passive**

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (1) He gave me a purse. | I was given a purse by him. |
| (2) Rahim teaches us English. | A purse was given to me by him. |
| | English is taught us by Rahim. |
| | We are taught English by Rahim. |

(3) The Principal asked him a question.

A question was asked him by the Principal.

He was asked a question by the Principal.

(4) Rani gave him a letter.

A letter was given to him by Rani.

He was given a letter by Rani.

Miscellaneous Sentences

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| (1) He likes people to call him, 'Don'. | <i>Active</i> |
| He likes to be called 'Don'. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (2) Someone will serve lunch. | <i>Active</i> |
| Lunch will be served. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (3) None must leave bicycles and scooters unlocked. | <i>Active</i> |
| Bicycles and scooters must not be left unlocked. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (4) Students may keep the library books for two weeks only. After that they must return them, otherwise they have to pay fine. | <i>Active</i> |
| The library books may be kept for two weeks only. After that they must be returned otherwise fine has to be paid. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (5) No one can do any thing unless someone gives us accurate information. | <i>Active</i> |
| Nothing can be done unless we are given accurate information. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (6) They threw him out. | <i>Active</i> |
| He was thrown out (by them). | <i>Passive</i> |
| (7) One must do one's duty. | <i>Active</i> |
| Duty must be done. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (8) The officer wants his subordinates to obey him. | <i>Active</i> |
| The officer wants to be obeyed by his subordinates. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (9) He wants that he should be treated as king. | <i>Active</i> |
| He wants to be treated as king. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (10) Ram desires his wife to respect his parents. | <i>Active</i> |
| Ram desires his parents to be respected by his wife. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (11) He wants someone to take photographs. | <i>Active</i> |
| He wants photographs to be taken. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (12) He recommended using the bullet proof car. | <i>Active</i> |
| He recommended that the bullet proof car should be used. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (13) I remember them taking me to library. | <i>Active</i> |
| I remember being taken to library. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (14) We saw them go out. | <i>Active</i> |
| They were seen go out. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (15) They let us go. | <i>Active</i> |
| We were let go. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (16) When he arrived home, Police arrested him. | <i>Active</i> |
| When he arrived home he was arrested by police. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (17) I saw her sing a song. | <i>Active</i> |
| She was seen to sing a song. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (18) Brutus accused Caesar of ambition. | <i>Active</i> |
| Caesar was accused of ambition by Brutus. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (19) We elected him secretary of the society. | <i>Active</i> |
| He was elected secretary of the society. | <i>Passive</i> |
| (20) Her reply shocked me. | <i>Active</i> |
| I was shocked at her reply. | <i>Passive</i> |

**TEST YOURSELF Exercises**

01

Change the Voice of the following sentences:

Active : Present Indefinite

- (1) The movie fascinates me.
- (2) The movie bores Jack.
- (3) The movie surprises them.

Active : Past Indefinite

- (4) The movie bored me.
- (5) The movie fascinated Janu.
- (6) The movie surprised them.

Active: Present Continuous

- (7) I am helping Shanu.
- (8) Jane is helping Suresh and Lily.
- (9) I am cleaning the bathroom.

Active : Past Continuous

- (10) They were cleaning the bedroom.
- (11) Surabhi was cleaning the kitchen and gallery.

Present Perfect

- (12) I have mailed the gift.
- (13) Janu has mailed the gifts.

Past Perfect

- (14) Jack had directed the movie.
- (15) Prem had directed those movies.

Future Perfect

- (16) Johni will have finished the project next month.
- (17) They will have finished the projects before then.

Future Indefinite

- (18) I will mail the gift.
- (19) Janu will mail the gifts.

Future Continuous

- (20) I am going to make the cake.
- (21) Surbhi is going to make two cakes.

Active : Will/Won't (Will Not)

- (22) Shanu will invite Toni to the party.
- (23) Shanu won't invite Jack to the party.
(Shanu will not invite Jack to the party).

Active : Can / Can't

- (24) Mala can foretell the future.
- (25) Toni can't foretell the future.
(Toni can not foretell the future.)

May / May not

- (26) Her company may give Kashyap a new office.
- (27) The lazy students may not do the homework.

Might/ Might not

- (28) Her company might give Kashyap new office.
- (29) The lazy students might not do the homework.

Should / Should not

- (30) Students should memorise English verbs.
- (31) Children shouldn't smoke cigarettes.

Ought to

- (32) Students ought to learn English verbs.
(Negative ought to is rarely used.)

Had better / Had better not

- (33) Students had better practise English everyday.
- (34) Children had better not drink whisky.

Must / Must not

- (35) Tourists must apply for a passport to travel abroad.
- (36) Customers must not use that door.

Has to / Have to

- (37) She has to practise English everyday.
- (38) Sarla and Mira have to wash the dishes everyday.

Doesn't have to / Don't have to

- (39) Mira doesn't have to clean her bedroom everyday.
- (40) The children don't have to clean their bedrooms everyday.

Be supposed to / Not supposed to

- (41) I am supposed to type the composition.
- (42) I am not supposed to copy the stories in the book.
- (43) Jackie is supposed to clean the living room.
- (44) She isn't supposed to eat candy and gum.
- (45) They are supposed to make dinner for the family.
- (46) They aren't supposed to make dessert.

Should / Shouldn't have

- (47) The students should have learnt the verbs.
- (48) The children shouldn't have broken the window.

Ought to have

- (49) Students ought to have learnt the verbs. (Negative ought to is rarely used.)

Supposed to (Past)

- (50) I was supposed to type the composition.
- (51) I wasn't supposed to copy the story in the book.
- (52) Jackie was supposed to clean the living room.
- (53) She wasn't supposed to eat candy and gum.
- (54) Frank and Jane were supposed to make dinner.
- (55) They weren't supposed to make dessert.

May have / May not have

- (56) That firm may have offered Kakitana a new job.
- (57) The students may not have written the paper.

Might have / Might not have

- (58) That firm might have offered Kakitana a new job.
- (59) The students might not have written the paper.

02

Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:

[BERU 1999]

- (1) The Government is spending too much money on Operation Pink.
- (2) They have built six new helipads at Naila.
- (3) She always gives me calendars and diaries at new year.
- (4) You will have to amuse him with riddles and bed-time stories.
- (5) They discovered a new pill to stimulate the appetite.
- (6) It fascinated me.
- (7) A duke of the sixteenth century had killed his wife in this room.
- (8) He performed his symphony for the first time last week
- (9) The owner himself showed them the house.
- (10) Have they carried out his instructions?
- (11) We have to pick the fruit very early in the morning.
- (12) They allowed Harry to go but they did not allow Dick.
- (13) Fear of death oppresses some old people.
- (14) The judge advised me to settle the matter out of court.
- (15) Rajeev chose his words with care.
- (16) If in the sixteenth century they could make history by building monuments, in the twentieth century they can make it by selling and reselling them.
- (17) The promised Mary a new doll for her birthday.
- (18) No one ever taught me the rudiments of music.
- (29) They have proved all his calculations wrong.
- (20) No one has climbed this mountain before.
- (21) Did you grow these vegetables in your own garden ?
- (22) They answered me most rudely in the shop.
- (23) You should switch off the electricity when changing a fuse.

03**(A) Rewrite the following sentences into Passive Voice:**

[RPSC Ajmer]

- (1) They rejected his proposal and laughed at him.
- (2) Who is bothering you ?
- (3) One must do one's duty.

(B) Rewrite the following sentences into the Passive Voice:

[RPSC Ajmer 1989]

4. Two oxen pull them plough.
5. The murderer hid the knife in the grass.
6. Anyone will rob you if you are not careful.

(C) Rewrite the following sentences into Passive Voice.

[RPSC Ajmer 1989]

7. He asked me to wait.
8. She is running a school these days.
9. Let them do it now.
10. Everyone knows that Mr. A is gang leader.
11. Has someone told you about your result?

(D) Put the following sentences into Passive Voice:

[RPSC Ajmer 1989]

- (12) Please sit here and wait till I return.
- (13) Has someone made all the necessary arrangements ?
- (14) It was clear that the parents had brought the child up well.
- (15) They can't put you in prison if they haven't tried you.
- (16) People say that tortoises live longer than elephants.

(E) Put the following sentences into Passive Voice:

[RPSC Ajmer 1989]

- (17) They did not tell me the truth about the situation.
- (18) They will look after you well.
- (19) Did they not tell you to be here by six O'clock?
- (20) It surprised me to hear someone had robbed you.

(F) Change the voice of the following sentences:

[RPSC Ajmer 1989]

- (21) Did you paint these pictures in your own studio?
- (22) They have decided to increase the school fees this year.
- (23) Anger provokes many people to take hasty decisions which they later regret very much.
- (24) You must understand clearly that this is the last time I shall allow it.
- (25) You cannot expect the children to understand these problems.

04**Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:**

- (1) He will have closed his shop by 8 O'clock.
- (2) They will have finished the paper by 11 O'clock.
- (3) I shall have saved enough money to buy a house by 1990.
- (4) He will have advised me.
- (5) He can help you.
- (6) The child could not climb the tree.
- (7) You may return the book next week.
- (8) They might win the match.
- (9) We should obey our parents.
- (10) He would make no promise.
- (11) We ought to respect our teachers.
- (12) You must do your duty.
- (13) You could have solved the sum.
- (14) He should have helped his friend.
- (15) I would have attended the meeting but for the rain.
- (16) Father must have taken away the purse.

05*Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:*

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| (1) Post this letter. | (2) Never tell a lie. |
| (3) Tell him to go. | (4) Do not pluck flowers. |
| (5) Cut your coat according to your cloth. | (6) Let him sing a song. |
| (7) Please shut the door. | (8) Kindly grant me leave. |
| (9) Hurry up, please. | (10) Work hard. |
| (11) Do not smoke. | (12) Stand up on the bench. |

06*Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| (1) Do they like their teachers? | (2) Does this shopkeeper sell grocery? |
| (3) Did they win the match? | (4) Did you grow vegetables? |
| (5) Is he running a race? | (6) Were they singing songs? |
| (7) What does this word mean? | (8) Why do you blame us? |
| (9) Who teaches you English? | (10) Can you solve this sum? |

07*Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| (1) This bottle contains milk. | (2) I know his father. |
| (3) The report alarmed us. | (4) My progress satisfied my teachers. |
| (5) You cannot please everybody. | (6) Satish married Kanika. |
| (7) Her failure surprised us. | (8) Stamp collection interested the boy. |
| (9) His death shocked us. | (10) His servant has offended him. |
| (11) I want to buy a house. | (12) Women like men to flatter them. |
| (13) It is time to take tea. | (14) It is now time to close the shop. |
| (15) He ran fast to win the race. | |

08*Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:*

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) Honey tastes sweet. | (2) The rose smells sweet. |
| (3) He hopes to win a prize. | (4) Thank God. |
| (5) May you live long! | (6) People take rice all over the world. |
| (7) One should keep one's promise. | (8) One must endure what one cannot cure. |
| (9) God helps those who help themselves. | |
| (10) Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones at others. | |

09*Change the following sentences into Active voice from the Passive:*

- (1) The plants are being watered by the gardener.
- (2) He is not hated by me.
- (3) Were you consulted by him?
- (4) Your kindness will never be forgotten by me.
- (5) The room is being swept by the sweeper.
- (6) Good news was being expected by us.
- (7) We have been insulted by her.
- (8) The clerk had been bribed by them.
- (9) Will the lesson have been taught by the teacher?

- (10) The poor must be helped by the rich.
- (11) Let the poor not be teased.
- (12) He was offered a good job by the management.
- (13) The matter is being looked into by the judge.
- (14) The minister was being waited for by the people.
- (15) We were shocked at the news of his death.
- (16) By whom were you insulted?

10

Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| (1) She has invited me. | (2) He has insulted you. |
| (3) We have painted the doors. | (4) They have won the match. |
| (5) The peon has posted the letter. | (6) The servant had already cooked food. |
| (7) He had not seen the Taj before. | (8) I had sold the old newspapers. |
| (9) They had prepared many plans. | (10) I had never seen such a lovely sight before. |

11

Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| (1) Should we not obey our parents? | (2) Must I help him? |
| (3) How can I serve my country? | (4) Could you have done it? |
| (5) Have you finished the assignment? | (6) Has he returned the books? |
| (7) Had he obtained leave? | (8) Will you have read the book by tomorrow? |
| (9) What have you drawn? | (10) Who has broken the bottle? |

12

Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) My friends helped me. | (2) She did not like the sari. |
| (3) They wrote letters. | (4) The teacher corrected our notebooks. |
| (5) A large crowd cheered the players. | (6) The teacher will teach a new lesson today. |
| (7) The labourers will repair the road. | (8) We shall serve our country. |
| (9) She will help us. | (10) They will not disobey me. |

13

Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:

- (1) It is time to say prayers.
- (2) It is necessary to write this essay.
- (3) She told me a wonderful story.
- (4) Somebody gave her a box of chocolates on her birthday.
- (5) They laughed at the blind man.
- (6) A car ran over a child.
- (7) I am listening to you.
- (8) We must obey the laws of the land.
- (9) They are watching the sports.
- (10) Did you make a noise ?
- (11) Shalini threw the ball.
- (12) Shall I ever forget those happy days?

14*Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:*

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) The farmer will not have watered the fiels. | (2) Get out of my sight. |
| (3) We shall no more hear his voice . | (4) People will remember him. |
| (5) A child cannot lift it . | (6) He might solve it. |
| (7) We can buy gold, but we cannot buy sympathy. | (8) You might have heard the name of Gandhiji. |
| (9) There is no money to waste. | |
| (10) The policeman shot down the criminal with a revolver. | |
| (11) You must write your answer on both sides. | (12) They don't allow smoking here. |

15*Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:*

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) The fruit-seller sells fruit. | (2) The teacher calls the roll. |
| (3) My friends help me. | (4) The doctor treats the patients. |
| (5) Children like sweets. | (6) He writes poems. |
| (7) Everybody worships the rising Sun. | (8) I do not understand this question. |
| (9) He does not obey his parents. | (10) He sang a song. |

16*Change the following sentences into Passive Voice:*

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) The boy is flying a kite. | (2) You are reading this lesson. |
| (3) We are not wasting our time. | (4) The farmers are reaping the crops. |
| (5) The girls are drawing the pictures. | (6) He is deceiving me. |
| (7) The grandmother was telling a story. | (8) We were expecting good news. |
| (9) The magician was showing tricks. | (10) The students were solving the sums. |

**SOLUTIONS****TEST YOURSELF Exercises****Solution TYE : 01**

- (1) I am fascinated by the movie.
- (2) Jack is bored by the movie.
- (3) They are surprised by the movie.
- (4) I was bored by the movie.
- (5) Janu was fascinated by the movie.
- (6) They were surprised by the movie.
- (7) Shanu is being helped by me.
- (8) Suresh and Lily are being helped by Jane.
- (9) The bathroom is being cleaned by me.
- (10) The bedroom was being cleaned by them.
- (11) The kitchen and gallery were being cleaned by Surbhi.
- (12) The gift has been mailed by me.
- (13) The gifts have been mailed by Janu.
- (14) Those movie had been directed by Jack.

- (15) The movies had been directed by Prem.
- (16) The project will have been finished by next month by Johny.
- (17) The projects will have been finished before ten.
- (18) The gift will be mailed by me.
- (19) The gifts will be mailed by Janu.
- (20) The cake is going to be made by me.
- (21) Two cakes are going to be made by Surbhi.
- (22) Toni will be invited to the party by Shanu.
- (23) Jack won't be invited to the party by Shanu.
(Jack will not be invited to the party by Shanu.)
- (24) The future can be foretold by Mala.
- (25) The future can't be foretold by Toni.
(The future cannot be foretold by Toni.)
- (26) Kashyap may be given a new office by her company.
- (27) The homework may not be done by the lazy students.
- (28) Kashyap might be given a new office by her company.
- (29) The homework might not be done by the lazy students.
- (30) English verbs should be memorised by the students.
- (31) Cigarettes should not be smoked by children.
- (32) English verbs ought to be learnt by students.
- (33) English had better be practised by students everyday.
- (34) Whisky had better not be drunk by children.
- (35) A passport must be applied for by tourists to travel abroad.
- (36) That door must not be used by customers.
- (37) English has to be practiced by her everyday.
- (38) The dishes have to be washed by Sarla and Mira everyday.
- (39) Her bedroom doesn't have to be cleaned by Mira everyday.
- (40) Their bedrooms don't have to be cleaned by the children everyday.
- (41) The composition is supposed to be typed by me.
- (42) The stories in the book are not supposed to be copied by me.
- (43) The living room is supposed to be cleaned by Jackie.
- (44) Candy and gum aren't supposed to be eaten by her.
- (45) Dinner for the family is supposed to be made by them.
- (46) Dessert isn't supposed to be made by them.
- (47) The verbs should have been learnt by the students.
- (48) The window shouldn't have been broken by the children.
- (49) The verbs ought to have been learnt by the students.
- (50) The composition was supposed to be typed by me.
- (51) The story in the book wasn't supposed to be copied.
- (52) The living room was supposed to be cleaned by Jackie.
- (53) Candy and gum weren't supposed to be eaten by her.
- (54) Dinner was supposed to be made by them.
- (55) Dessert wasn't supposed to be made by them.
- (56) Kakitana may have been offered a new job by that firm.
- (57) The paper may not have been written by the students.
- (58) Kakitana might have been offered a new job by that firm.
- (59) The paper might not have been written by the students.

Solution TYE 02

- (1) Too much money is being spent on Operation Pink.
- (2) Six new helipads have been built at Naila.
- (3) I am always given calendars and diaries at new year by her.
- (4) He will have to be amused with riddles and bed times stories.
- (5) A new pill to stimulate the appetite was discovered.
- (6) I was fascinated by it.
- (7) The wife of a duke of the sixteenth century was killed by him in this room.
- (8) His symphony was performed for the first time last week.
- (9) They were shown the house by the owner himself.
- (10) Have his instructions been carried out by them ?
- (11) The fruit have to be picked very early in the morning.
- (12) Harry was allowed to go but Dick was not (allowed to go).
- (13) Some old people are oppressed with the fear of death.
- (14) I was advised to settle the matter out of court by the judge.
- (15) Words were chosen with care by Rajiv.
- (16) If history could be made by building monuments in the 16th century it can be made by selling and reselling them in the twentieth century.
- (17) Mary was promised a new doll on her birthday.
- (18) I was never taught the rudiments of music.
- (19) All his calculations have been proved wrong.
- (20) This mountain hasn't been climbed before.
- (21) Were these vegetables grown in your own garden?
- (22) I was most rudely answered in the shop.
- (23) The electricity should be switched off when changing a fuse.

Solution TYE 03

- (A) (1) His proposal was rejected and he was laughed at.
- (2) By whom are you being bothered?
- (3) Duty must be done.
- (B) (4) The plough is pulled by two oxen.
- (5) The knife was hidden in the grass by the murderer.
- (6) You will be robbed if you are not careful.
- (C) (7) I was asked to wait.
- (8) A school is being run by her these days.
- (9) Let it be done by them now.
- (10) Mr. A is known to be a gang leader.
- (11) Have you been told about your result ?
- (D) (12) You are requested to sit here and wait here till I return.
- (13) Have all the necessary arrangements been made ?
- (14) It was clear that the child had been well brought up.
- (15) You can't be put in prison if you haven't been tried.
- (16) Tortoises are said to live longer than elephants.
- (E) (17) I was not told the truth about the situation.
- (18) You will be well looked after be them.
- (19) Were you not told to be here by six O'clock?
- (20) I was surprised to hear you had been robbed.

- (F) (21) Were these pictures painted by you in your own studio?
(22) It has been decided to increase the school fees this year.
(23) Many people are provoked by anger to take hasty decisions which are very much regretted later.
(24) It must be understood clearly by you that this is the last time it will be allowed by me.
(25) The children cannot be expected to understand these problems.

Solution TYE 04

- (1) His shop will have been closed by him by 8 O'clock.
(2) The paper will have been finished by them by 11 O'clock.
(3) Enough money will have been saved by me to buy a house by 1990.
(4) I shall have been advised by him. (5) You can be helped by him.
(6) The tree could not be climbed by the child.
(7) The book may be returned by you next week.
(8) The match might be won by them.
(9) Our parents should be obeyed by us.
(10) No promise would be made by him.
(11) Our teachers ought to be respected by us.
(12) Your duty must be done by you.
(13) The sum could have been solved by you.
(14) His friend should have been helped by him.
(15) The meeting would have been attended by me, but for the rain.
(16) The purse must have been taken away by father.

Solution TYE 05

- (1) Let this letter be posted. (2) Let a lie never be told.
(3) Let him be told to go. (4) Let flowers not be plucked.
(5) Let your coat be cut according to your cloth. (6) Let a song be sung by him.
(7) You are requested to shut the door. (8) You are requested to grant me leave.
(9) You are requested to hurry up. (10) You are advised to work hard.
(11) You are advised not to smoke. (12) You are ordered to stand up on the bench.

Solution TYE 06

- (1) Are their teachers liked by them? (2) Is grocery sold by this shopkeeper?
(3) Was the match won by them? (4) Were vegetables grown by you?
(5) Is a race being run by him? (6) Were songs being sung by them?
(7) What is meant by this word? (8) Why are we blamed by you?
(9) By whom are you taught English? (10) Can this sum be solved by you?

Solution TYE 07

- (1) Milk is contained in this bottle. (2) His father is known to me.
(3) We were alarmed at the report. (4) My teachers were satisfied with my progress.
(5) Everybody cannot be pleased with you. (6) Kanika was married to Satish.
(7) We were surprised at her failure. (8) The boy was interested in stamp collection.
(9) We were shocked at his death. (10) He has been offended with his servant.
(11) I want a house to be bought. (12) Women like to be flattered by men.
(13) It is time for tea to be taken. (14) It is now time for the shop to be closed.
(15) He ran fast for the race to be won.

Solution TYE 08

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Honey is sweet when (it is) tasted. | (2) The rose is sweet when (it is) smelt. |
| (3) It is hoped that he will win a prize. | (4) God be thanked. |
| (5) It is prayed that you may live long. | (6) Rice is taken all over the world. |
| (7) Promise should be kept. | (8) What cannot be cured must be endured. |
| (9) Those who help themselves are helped by God. | |
| (10) Stones should not be thrown at others by those who live in glass houses. | |

Solution TYE 09

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) The gardener is watering the plants. | (2) I do not hate him. |
| (3) Did he consult you? | (4) I shall never forget your kindness. |
| (5) The sweeper is sweeping the room. | (6) We were expecting good news. |
| (7) She has insulted us. | (8) They had bribed the clerk. |
| (9) Will the teacher have taught the lesson. | (10) The rich must help the poor. |
| (11) Do not tease the poor. | (12) The management offered him a good job. |
| (13) The judge is looking into the matter. | (14) The people were waiting for the minister. |
| (15) The news of his death shocked us. | (16) Who insulted you? |

Solution TYE 10

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) I have been invited by her. | (2) You have been insulted by him. |
| (3) The doors have been painted by us. | (4) The match has been won by them. |
| (5) The letter has been posted by the peon. | (6) Food had already been cooked by the servant. |
| (7) The Taj had not been seen by him before. | (8) The old newspapers had been sold by me. |
| (9) Many plans had been prepared by them. | |
| (10) Such a lovely sight had never been seen by me before. | |

Solution TYE 11

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| (1) Should our parents not be obeyed by us? | (2) Must he be helped by me? |
| (3) How can my country be served by me? | (4) Could it have been done by you? |
| (5) Has the assignment been finished by you? | |
| (6) Have the books been returned by him? | |
| (7) Has leave been obtained by him? | |
| (8) Will the book have been read by you by tomorrow? | |
| (9) What has been drawn by you? | |
| (10) By whom has the bottle been broken? | |

Solution TYE 12

- (1) I was helped by my friends.
- (2) The sari was not liked by her.
- (3) Letters were written by them.
- (4) Our notebooks were corrected by the teacher.
- (5) The players were cheered by a large crowd.
- (6) A new lesson will be taught by the teacher today.
- (7) The road will be repaired by the labourers.
- (8) Our country will be served by us.
- (9) We shall be helped by her.
- (10) I shall not be disobeyed by them.

Solution TYE 13

- (1) It is time for prayers to be said.
- (2) It is necessary for this essay to be written.
- (3) A wonderful story was told to me. *Or*
I was told a wonderful story by her.
- (4) A box of chocolates was given to her on her birthday. *Or*
She was given a box of chocolates on her birthday.
- (5) The blind man was laughed at by them.
- (6) A child was run over by a car.
- (7) You are being listened to by me.
- (8) The laws of the land must be obeyed.
- (9) The sports are being watched by them.
- (10) Was a noise made by you ?
- (11) The ball was thrown by Shalini.
- (12) Will those happy days ever be forgotten by me ?

Solution TYE 14

- (1) The fields will not have been watered by the farmers.
- (2) You are ordered to get out of my sight.
- (3) His voice will be heard no more.
- (4) He will be remembered .
- (5) It cannot be lifted by a child.
- (6) It might be solved by him.
- (7) Gold can be bought but sympathy cannot be bought.
- (8) The name of Gandhiji might have been heard by you.
- (9) There is no money to be wasted.
- (10) The criminal was shot down by the policeman with a revolver.
- (11) Your answer must be written on both sides.
- (12) Smoking is not allowed here.

Solution TYE 15

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Fruit is sold by the fruit-seller. | (2) The rolls is called by the teacher. |
| (3) I am helped by my friends. | (4) The patients are treated by the doctor. |
| (5) Sweets are liked by children. | (6) Poems are written by him. |
| (7) The rising Sun is worshipped by every body. | (8) This question is not understood by me. |
| (9) His parents are not obeyed by him. | (10) A song was sung by him. |

Solution TYE 16

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) A kite is being flown by the boy. | (2) This lesson is being read by you. |
| (3) Our time is not being wasted by us. | (4) The crops are being reaped by the farmers. |
| (5) The pictures are being drawn by the girls. | (6) I am being deceived by him. |
| (7) A story was being told by the grandmother. | (8) Good news was being expected by us. |
| (9) Tricks were being shown by the magician. | (10) The sums were being solved by the students. |

PREPOSITION

Preposition वाक्य में ऐसा शब्द है जो सामान्यतया Noun/Pronoun के पूर्व प्रयुक्त होता है एवं Noun /Pronoun का सम्बन्ध, वाक्य में प्रयुक्त अन्य शब्दों से व्यक्त करता है।

Definition : Preposition is a word placed before a Noun or Pronoun, denotes the relation, the person or thing referred by it, has with something else.

इस परिभाषा से Preposition के सम्बन्ध में निम्नलिखित दो बातें स्पष्ट होती हैं :

- (1) Preposition का प्रयोग Noun या Pronoun से पूर्व होता है।
- (2) यह Noun या Pronoun का सम्बन्ध, वाक्य में अन्य वस्तु से व्यक्त करता है।

Preposition - Pre (पहले) + Position (स्थिति) अर्थात् जो noun या pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त होता है।

Rule

There is one very simple rule about prepositions. And unlike most rules, this rule has no exception. A Preposition is followed by a 'Noun'. It is never followed by a Verb.

By 'noun' we include :

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| (a) noun (cat, money, love) | (b) proper noun (name like India, Mira) |
| (c) pronoun (him, you, her, us) | (d) noun group (my first job) |
| (e) gerund (swimming, playing) | |

A Preposition cannot be followed by a verb. If we want to follow a Preposition by a verb, we must use the '-ing' form which is really a gerund or verb in noun form.

In the following sentences, why is 'to' followed by a verb? That should be impossible, according to the above rule :

Read the following sentences :

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) I would like to move now. | (b) He used to smoke. |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|



In these sentences, 'to' is not a preposition. It is part of the infinitive ('to move', 'to smoke').

Read the following examples :

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| (1) The food is <u>on</u> the table. | (2) She lives <u>in</u> China. |
| (3) Mira is looking <u>for</u> you. | (4) The letter is <u>under</u> your black book. |
| (5) I ate <u>before</u> coming. | (6) He is swimming <u>in</u> the river. |

उपर्युक्त वाक्यों में underlined words, जो Noun या Pronoun का सम्बन्ध अन्य शब्दों से व्यक्त करते हैं, Prepositions हैं।

Important

- (1) जिस Noun/Pronoun से पूर्व Preposition प्रयुक्त हुआ है, वह Noun/Pronoun, उस Preposition का Object कहलाता है।
- (2) सामान्यतया Preposition का प्रयोग Noun/Pronoun (Object) के पूर्व ही किया जाता है।

निम्न स्थितियों (Positions) में preposition इनके बाद या वाक्य के शुरू में भी प्रयुक्त हो सकते हैं।

Typical Position of Preposition

- (1) जब Object-Interrogative Pronoun; जैसे: What, Who, Whom, Which, Where etc; होता है, तो Preposition को वाक्य के अन्त में लगाया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) What are you thinking <u>of</u> ?	(b) What is he crying <u>for</u> ?
(c) What are you starting <u>at</u> ?	(d) Which of these chairs did you sit <u>on</u> ?

 यहाँ What, Who, Which आदि Interrogative Pronouns हैं, जो underlined words Preposition के Objects हैं।
- (2) जब Object-Relative Pronoun, 'that' होता है, तो भी Preposition को वाक्य के अन्त में लगाया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) Here is the magazine that you asked <u>for</u> .	(b) This is the dish that she is fond <u>of</u> .
(c) This is the girl that I told you <u>of</u> .	(d) I know the colony that he lives <u>in</u> .
- (3) जब Object-Infinitive हो तो Preposition को Infinitive के बाद लगाया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) This is a good hotel to stay <u>at</u> .	(b) I need a pencil to write <u>with</u> .
(c) It is a beautiful house to live <u>in</u> .	(d) This is ball to play <u>with</u> .
- (4) कई वाक्यों में Relative Pronoun, Hidden किया हुआ रहता है। इनमें Preposition अन्त में आता है। जैसे:

(a) This is the house (where) I lived <u>in</u> .	(b) This is the girl (that) I told you <u>of</u> .
---	--
- (5) कुछ विविध प्रकार के वाक्यों के अन्त में Preposition लगता है। जैसे:

(a) I hate being laughed <u>at</u> .	(b) This I insist <u>on</u> .
(c) He likes being looked <u>at</u> .	(d) He is known all the world <u>over</u> .
- (6) कुछ वाक्यों में Preposition का प्रयोग शुरू में ही किया जाता है। सामान्यतया ऐसे वाक्य Interrogative होते हैं। जैसे:

(a) By which train did you come ?	(b) For whom was instructions given?
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Kinds of Preposition

Preposition को मुख्यतया चार भागों में वर्गीकृत किया गया है।

- (1) **Simple Prepositions** : जैसे: At, in, for, from, of, off, on, out, till, to, up, with, through, down, by etc. ये एक शब्द के एवं सामान्यतया काम में आने वाले Prepositions हैं।
- (2) **Compound Prepositions** : ये Prepositions; a या be अन्य Preposition के साथ मिलकर बनते हैं। जैसे:

about	beside	inside
along	below	outside
amidst	beneath	within
among	between	without
aloud	beyond	underneath
- (3) **Phrasal Prepositions** : दो या अधिक शब्दों को जोड़कर बनने वाले Prepositions, Phrasal Preposition कहलाते हैं। जैसे:

along with	in addition to	in place of
because of	in case of	in spite of
by means of	in course of	owing to
for the sake of	with reference to	in comparison to
in favour of with	with regard to	instead of
in accordance with	in respect to	according to
- (4) **Participle Prepositions** : जब वाक्य में Present Participle का प्रयोग बिना Noun/Pronoun के होता है, तो Present Participle एक Preposition की तरह function करता है। जैसे: Concerning, Pending, Regarding, Considering, Touching etc.

(a) Pending enquiry into the matter, he was transferred from the office.	(b) Considering the quality, the prices are reasonable.
--	---

Some Important Prepositions

(1) **At/In/On** : These are very commonly used Prepositions :

Note the use of these prepositions in reference of 'Time' :

- (i) 'At' is used for a Precise Time.
- (ii) 'In' is used for Months, Years, Centuries and Long Periods.
- (iii) 'On' is used for Days and Dates.

AT	IN	ON
Precise Time	Months, Years, Centuries and Long Periods	Days and Dates
at 3 O'clock	in May	on Sunday
at 10:30 am	in summer	on Tuesday
at noon	in the summer	on 6th March
at dinner time	in 1990	on 25th January, 2007
at bed time	in the 1990s	on Christmas Day
at sunrise	in the next century	on Independence Day
at sunset	in the Ice Age	on my birthday
at the moment	in the past/future	on New Year's Eve

Look at the following examples :

- (a) I have a meeting at 10 am.
- (b) That shop closes at midnight.
- (c) Richa went home at lunch time.
- (d) Do you think we will go to Saturn in the future?
- (e) There should be a lot of progress in the next century.
- (f) Where will you be on Independence Day ?
- (g) Do you work on Sundays ?
- (h) Her birthday is on 26th April.

Note the use of the Preposition of time 'at' in the following expressions :

Expression	Example
at night	The stars shine <i>at night</i> .
at the weekend	I don't usually work <i>at the weekend</i> .
at Christmas/Easter	I stay with my family <i>at Christmas</i> .
at the same time	We finished the test <i>at the same time</i> .
at present	He's not home <i>at present</i> . Try later.

Note the use of the Preposition of time 'in' and 'on' in these common expressions :

In	On
in the morning	on Tuesday morning
in the mornings	on Saturday mornings
in the afternoon(s)	on Sunday afternoons
in the evening(s)	on Monday evening

Important

लेकिन last, next, every के साथ At, In या On का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (i) I went to Mexico last May. (not in last May)
- (ii) He's coming back next Sunday. (not on next Sunday)
- (iii) I go home every Easter. (not at every Easter)
- (iv) We'll call you this evening. (not in this evening)

Note the use of these Prepositions in reference of 'Place' :

- (i) At is used for a POINT. (ii) In is used for an Enclosed SPACE.
(iii) On is used for a SURFACE.

At Point	In Enclosed Space	On Surface
at the corner	in the garden	on the wall
at the bus stop	in Delhi	on the ceiling
at the door	in India	on the door
at the top of the page	in a box	on the cover
at the end of the road	in my pocket	on the floor
at the entrance	in my wallet	on the carpet
at the crossroads	in a building	on the menu
	in a car	on a page

Look at the following examples :

- Ruma is waiting for you at the bus stop.
- The shop is at the end of the lane.
- When will you arrive at the school?
- I live on the 4th floor at 21 Diamond Street in Kolkata.
- Do you work in a company?
- I have a meeting in Delhi.
- Do you live in India?
- Saturn is in the Solar System.
- The author's name is on the cover of the book.
- There are no prices on this menu.
- You are standing on my foot.
- There was a 'no smoking' sign on the wall.

Please note that these three Prepositions are most commonly used in writing and speaking, so the students must learn the use of these Prepositions very well.

(2) At/In/To/Into :

(A) 'At' स्थिर अवस्था के लिए तथा 'In' गतिशील स्थिति हेतु प्रयोग होता है। जैसे:

- (a) She is at home. (b) The train is in motion.

(B) 'At' छोटे स्थान हेतु तथा 'In' बड़े स्थान हेतु प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे:

- (a) He lives at Alwar in Rajasthan.
(b) A temple is situated at Madurai in Tamil Nadu.

(C) 'At' Point of time हेतु तथा 'In' का प्रयोग Period of time हेतु किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) The train will arrive at 6 am in the morning.
(b) He will meet you in the morning.

(D) **In/Into** : 'In' का प्रयोग पूर्व में ही जब कोई वस्तु अन्दर होती है, उसके लिए, जबकि 'Into' का प्रयोग गति (movement) के लिए किया गया है। जैसे:

- (a) There are three students in the class.
(b) He jumped into the river.

(E) **To/Into** : दोनों का प्रयोग गतिशीलता प्रदर्शित करता है। इनका प्रयोग वाक्य के अर्थ के अनुसार किया जाता है। To का अर्थ 'का' तथा Into का अर्थ 'अन्दर होता' है। जैसे:

- (a) He went to market.
(b) He jumped into the well.

(3) On/To/Onto :

On का समय हेतु प्रयोग

(a) He will come on Monday.

(b) Ram will go on 4th June.

To का स्थान हेतु प्रयोग

(a) He will go to Delhi.

(b) Ram will go to market tomorrow.

On/Onto : On का प्रयोग स्थिरता एवं गतिशीलता दोनों हेतु किया जा सकता है। जैसे:

(a) Snow fell on the hills.

(b) He is sitting on his suitcase.

Onto का प्रयोग मुख्य रूप से गतिशीलता (movement) हेतु तब होता है जब level (तल) change व्यक्त होता है। जैसे:

(a) People climbed onto their roofs.

(b) He lifted her onto the table.

(4) With/By : With का प्रयोग Instrument हेतु और By का प्रयोग Agent (कर्ता) हेतु किया जा सकता है। जैसे:

(a) The snake was killed by him with a stick.

(b) The letter was written by Suresh with a pencil.

(5) Since/For/From : Since का प्रयोग Perfect Tense में होता है। For का प्रयोग Perfect Tense में भी एवं अन्य Tense में भी 'समय की अवधि' के लिए होता है। Since का प्रयोग Point of time हेतु जैसे:

Since 6 o'clock/Last night/Last Monday/Since Morning/Evening/Monday/January/2004 etc.

For का प्रयोग अवधि हेतु ; जैसे : for two hours/two days/two years/a long time/some time etc.

From का प्रयोग 'समय से' कार्य होने के सन्दर्भ में होता है। From का प्रयोग Perfect Tense में नहीं होता, अन्य Tense में होता है। जैसे:

(a) He will go to college from next Monday.

(b) It has been raining for two hours.

(c) It has been raining since 2 o'clock.

(d) He worked for three hours.

From का प्रयोग स्थान के लिए भी होता है। जैसे:

(a) He is from Mumbai.

(b) Where do you come from ?

(6) For/During : For का प्रयोग सामान्यतया 'अवधि' हेतु तथा During का प्रयोग 'दौरान' के अर्थ में किया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) He has been ill for three days.

(b) It rained all Sunday, but stopped during the night.

जैसे: During childhood, during middle ages, during holidays, during summer vacations; for a month, for three days, for 15 years etc.

For का अर्थ भी 'के लिए' भी होता है अतः अर्थ के अनुसार for का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार से भी किया जा सकता है:

(a) I went there for summer vacations.

(b) I rented my car for the summer only.

(7) Below/Under : दोनों का अर्थ 'नीचे' होता है। सामान्यतया Under द्वारा वस्तु से Physical contact व्यक्त होता है। एवं Below से Contact व्यक्त नहीं होता है। जैसे:

(a) He placed the lamp below the almirah. (b) He put the books under the pillow.

Under का अर्थ Junior भी होता है।

(a) He is working under me. Or He is under me.

Below का प्रयोग dignity के Reference में भी किया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) It is below his dignity to beg for mercy.

(8) In/Within : In का अर्थ होता है 'में'। यह दिये गए समय के अन्तिम बिन्दु को व्यक्त करने में प्रयुक्त होता है। इसका तात्पर्य कार्य में लगने वाले समय को व्यक्त करना है।

Within का अर्थ होता है 'अन्दर-अन्दर'। यह दी गई 'समय सीमा' को व्यक्त करता है। Within का प्रयोग तब किया जाता है जब कार्य के उससे पहले ही पूर्ण होने की सम्भावना होती है। जैसे:

- (a) I will complete the work in a month. (b) I can repair the car within two hours.
(c) He will write a book in three months. (d) He can solve this question within an hour.
- (9) **Ago/Before** : Ago का प्रयोग Past की घटनाओं हेतु तथा Before का प्रयोग घटनाओं/कार्यों के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। जैसे :
(a) He came three days ago. (b) The train had left before he reached the station .
- (10) **Beside/Besides** : Beside का अर्थ 'साथ में/बगल में' होता है। जबकि Besides का अर्थ 'अतिरिक्त' (in addition to) होता है। जैसे :
(a) He was sitting beside Sarla. (b) He has a car besides a motor cycle.
- (11) **Between/Among** : Between का प्रयोग सामान्यतया, दो के मध्य के लिए किया जाता है। Among का प्रयोग, दो से अधिक, के मध्य के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है।
(a) He distributed his property between his two sons.
(b) He distributed his property among the poor.
Between का प्रयोग दो से अधिक के लिए तब किया जा सकता है जब वे परस्पर आबद्ध (closely associated) हों, जैसे :
(a) A treaty was signed between three parties.
(b) He inserted a needle between the close petals of a flower.
- (12) **Among/Amongst** : दोनों का प्रयोग दो से अधिक के सन्दर्भ में होता है। यदि इनके बाद वाक्य में 'the' आता है तो किसी (Among/Amongst) का भी प्रयोग किया जाता है, लेकिन इनके बाद स्वर से प्रारम्भ होने वाले शब्द हैं तो Amongst का प्रयोग किया जाता है। Amongst का प्रयोग कम प्रचलित है। जैसे :
(a) He distributed the toffees among/amongst the poor.
(b) He distributed the toffees amongst us.
- (13) **Off/Off** : Of सम्बन्ध स्थापित करने वाला Preposition जबकि Off से दूर हटने का भाव व्यक्त होता है। जैसे :
(a) He is a member of our family. (b) She is a member of our society.
(c) He is off duty now. (d) He jumped off the tower.
- (14) **Above/Over** : दोनों का अर्थ higher than (ऊँचा) होता है। कई स्थितियों में दोनों में से किसी का भी प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे:
(a) The helicopter is hovering above/over us. (b) Flags were waved above/over our heads.
Over कई अर्थों; जैसे: Covering (ढकना), on the other side of (दूसरी तरफ), across (आर-पार); में प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:
(a) I put a cloth over her. (b) He lives over this mountain.
(c) There is a bridge over the railway line.
(d) He put a blanket over the dead body.
Over का प्रयोग meal/tea/lunch/drink आदि के सन्दर्भ में निम्न प्रकार किया जा सकता है :
(a) We had a chat over a cup of tea. (b) The matter was decided over the lunch.
लेकिन Above का प्रयोग उक्त अर्थों में नहीं किया जाता है।
above का अर्थ 'earlier' या 'previously' (पूर्व) भी होता है। जैसे:
(a) He lives at the above address. (Previously mentioned)
(b) For details please see (P-1) above (Previously mentioned)
- (15) **Make of/Make from** : दोनों से material (सामग्री) का बोध होता है।
Make of का प्रयोग तब होता है जब वस्तु (सामग्री) की अवस्था में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे:
(a) A note book is made of papers. (b) A house is made of bricks.
Make from का प्रयोग तब होता है जब सामग्री की अवस्था बदल जाती है। जैसे:
(a) Butter is made from milk. (b) Paper is made from grass.

(16) In/With :

(a) He is writing in ink.

(b) He writes with a pen.

जब Countable noun होता है, तो Instrument हेतु With का प्रयोग होता है। जब Uncountable noun होता है तो in का प्रयोग होता है।

With का प्रयोग कई अर्थों में होता है।

(1) साथ-साथ He is playing with his sister.

(2) कारण He is trembling with fear.

(3) सम्बन्ध I have no relation with her.

(4) तरीका (Manner) He fought with determination.

(5) सहमति I agree with you.

(17) Opposite/In front of : Opposite का प्रयोग विपरीत एवं सामने दोनों अर्थों में होता है। In front of का अर्थ सामने ही होता है।

Ram and Shyam are having a meal. Ram is sitting at one side of the table and Shyam at the other side. तो हम कहेंगे:

Ram is sitting opposite Shyam.

हम यह नहीं कहेंगे कि Ram is sitting in front of Shyam.

Road के दोनों तरफ के मकानों के लिए भी Opposite का प्रयोग होगा।

His house is opposite to ours.

In front of का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है:

(a) He parked the car in front of the hotel.

(b) He put the plates on the table in front of us.

Preposition + Gerund : कुछ verbs एवं adjectives इस प्रकार के होते हैं जिनके साथ Preposition के बाद हमेशा gerund का प्रयोग होगा। इस तरह की verbs निम्नलिखित हैं :

abstain from

afraid of

debar from

good at

desist from

disqualified from

dissuade (one) from

prevent from

refrain from

hinder (one) from

prohibit (one) from

despair of

confident of

fond of

glad about

disappointed about/ at

sorry about/ for

desirous of

angry about/at

proud of

clever at

repent of

think of

hopeful of

fortunate in

assist in

excel in

negligent in

perceive in

persist in

famous for

keen on

fed up with

happy about/ at

pride in

bad at

succeed in

crazy about

successful in

bent on

insist on

meditate on

aim at

passion for

excuse for

tired of

worried about

excited about

interested in

sick of

इस सूची के अनुसार जो Preposition प्रयुक्त हुआ है, उसे याद करें क्योंकि यह महत्वपूर्ण है

(a) He *prevented* me *from* drinking cold water.(b) He *insisted on* trying again.(c) He was *debarred from* taking examination.(d) He *succeeded in* achieving his goal.(e) They are *afraid of* loosing the match.(f) Ram is *angry about* walking in the rain.(g) Prakash is *good at* working in the garden.(h) I'm *worried about* making mistakes.

- (i) This girl is *crazy about* playing tennis.
 (j) He is *disappointed about* seeing such a bad report.
 (k) We are *excited about* making our own film. (l) Sunder is *famous for* singing songs.
 (m) I'm *fed up with* being treated as a child. (n) Hina is *fond of* going to parties.
 (o) She is *glad about* getting married again.
 (p) The children are not *happy about* seeing a doctor.
 (q) Are you *interested in* writing poems? (r) Joe is *keen on* drawing.
 (s) She is *proud of* riding a snowboard. (t) We're *sick of* sitting around like this.
 (u) He's *sorry for* eating in the class. (v) I'm *tired of* waiting for you.
 (w) She is *used to* smoking. (x) He is *clever at* skate boarding.

Ellipsis in Preposition

कई बार वाक्यों में दो या अधिक nouns/pronouns हेतु एक ही Preposition का प्रयोग कर दिया जाता है। ध्यान रखें यदि एक ही Preposition दोनों nouns/pronouns हेतु उपयुक्त है तो यह एक शुद्ध/सही प्रयोग होगा, अन्यथा दोनों nouns/pronouns के साथ अलग-अलग Preposition लगाना होगा। (Ellipsis का अर्थ Omission अर्थात् एक को हटाना)

- (a) We should prevent damage and theft of public property. *Incorrect*
 यहाँ damage एवं theft के लिए एक ही Preposition 'of' का प्रयोग किया गया है, जो उचित नहीं है, क्योंकि damage के साथ to एवं theft के साथ of का प्रयोग किया जाना चाहिए। अतः उपयुक्त वाक्य को निम्न प्रकार से लिखा जाना चाहिए :
 We should prevent *damage to* and *theft of* public property. *Correct*
- (b) He is neither ashamed nor sorry for his misdeeds. *Incorrect*
 He is neither *ashamed of* nor *sorry for* his misdeeds. *Correct*
- (c) The design of this house is different and inferior to that of other house. *Incorrect*
 The design of this house is *different from* and *inferior to* that of other house. *Correct*

Preposition Omitted

निम्न स्थितियों में Preposition का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है :

- (1) सामान्यतया Transitive verbs के साथ Preposition का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। इस तरह की verbs हैं : Reach, resist, resemble, afford, accompany, attack, assist, pick, pervade, precede, obey, order, combat, benefit, inform, violate etc.
- (a) He ordered for a cup of tea. *Incorrect*
 He ordered a cup of tea. *Correct*
- (b) India attacked on Pakistan. *Incorrect*
 India attacked Pakistan. *Correct*
- (c) He informed to me yesterday. *Incorrect*
 He informed me yesterday. *Correct*
- (2) कुछ समय व्यक्त करने वाले शब्दों; जैसे : Morning, evening, day, night, month, week, year इत्यादि; से पूर्व यदि किसी Objective; जैसे : This, that, next, every, last इत्यादि; का प्रयोग हो, तो उस समय व्यक्त करने वाले शब्दों से पूर्व कोई Preposition नहीं लगाना चाहिए। जैसे:
- (a) She is going to Jaipur next morning. (b) I met her last evening.
 (c) Ram is coming here next month.
- (3) (A) अन्यथा समय व्यक्त करने वाले उक्त शब्दों के पूर्व Preposition आता है। जैसे:
 (a) She went in the morning. (b) I met her in the evening.
 (c) Ram is coming here on Sunday.

- (B) Yesterday, today, tomorrow के पूर्व भी कोई Preposition नहीं आता है। जैसे:
 (a) Please meet me tomorrow. (b) He is arriving today.
 (c) He went yesterday.
- (4) Home : Home के साथ जब गति (motion) व्यक्त करने वाली verbs; जैसे : go, get इत्यादि; का प्रयोग किया गया हो तो Home के साथ Preposition का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है जैसे:
 (a) It took them three hours to get home. (b) I went home by bus.
 लेकिन यदि home के तुरन्त पूर्व किसी phrase/word का प्रयोग हो, तो Preposition लगता है। जैसे:
 (a) She returned to her husband's home. (b) I went to his home.
 Home के साथ at का प्रयोग भी किया जाता है। जैसे:
 (a) You can do this work at home. (b) We can stay at home.
 लेकिन in के तुरन्त बाद home का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे:
 (a) You can do this job in your own home. (b) We can live in our home.
- (5) स्थान एवं समय व्यक्त करने वाले शब्दों; जैसे: Last week, last month, abroad, minute, bit, inside, outside इत्यादि के साथ भी सामान्यतया Preposition नहीं लगता है। जैसे:
 (a) He came here last month. (b) Sita is going abroad next week.
 (c) Please wait a minute/bit. (d) Please come inside.
 (e) Why are you standing outside?

Some Important Prepositions

Prepositions के नीचे दिए गए प्रयोग से ज्ञात होगा कि वाक्य के सन्दर्भ के अनुसार एक ही शब्द के साथ अलग-अलग Prepositions का प्रयोग किया जाता है। Prepositions का सही प्रयोग रटकर नहीं किया जा सकता है छात्रों को इस हेतु अभ्यास (Practice) करना चाहिए। वाक्य के अर्थ के अनुसार Prepositions का भी प्रयोग करना चाहिए।

A

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Abide at (place) : | I will <i>abide at</i> the railway station till the train arrives. |
| Abide in (house) : | She has been <i>abiding in</i> my house for the last three months. |
| Abide by (decision) : | She will <i>abide by</i> my decision positively. |
| Abide with (person) : | He will <i>abide with</i> his friend Suresh in all circumstances. |
| (2) Angry at (thing) : | He is <i>angry at</i> your way of questioning. |
| Angry with (person) : | Sita is <i>angry with</i> Ram. |
| Angry for (action) : | He is <i>angry for</i> your laughing at her wife. |
| (3) Arrive at (place) : | The train is going to <i>arrive at</i> the station within ten minutes. |
| Arrive in (country) : | He is scheduled to <i>arrive in</i> India on next Monday. |
| (4) Alight on (ground, thing) : | A large number of birds <i>alight on</i> the roof of my house. |
| Alight at (a place) : | The groom <i>alighted</i> from the elephant <i>at</i> her gate. |
| (5) Appeal to (person) : | I earnestly <i>appealed to</i> the principal to consider the matter again. |
| Appeal against (decision) : | He <i>appealed against</i> the decision of the lower court. |
| (6) Amuse at (thing) : | He is greatly <i>amused at</i> the indifferent attitude of his father. |
| Amused with (action) : | The boys <i>amused</i> themselves <i>with</i> throwing flowers at the girls. |
| (7) Ask for (a thing) : | He <i>asked</i> me <i>for</i> some help. |
| Ask from (person) : | He <i>asked</i> some help <i>from</i> me. |
| (8) Affiliated to :
(University, Board) | Our college is <i>affiliated to</i> the University of Punjab. |

- Affiliated with (a party) :** Bajrang Dal is *affiliated with* BJP indirectly.
- (9) **Annoyed at (thing) :** He became *annoyed at* my laughing.
Annoyed with (person) : He is *annoyed with* you.
- (10) **Antipathy to (thing) :** He has a great *antipathy to* wine.
Antipathy against (person) : You should not have any *antipathy against* your friend Jack.
- (11) **Answer to (person) :** You have to *answer to* me for your conduct.
Answer for (action) : He was asked to *answer for* the misbehaviour.
- (12) **Arm against (danger) :** We must *arm* ourselves *against* the danger of chemical weapons.
Arm with (weapon) : He *armed* himself *with* a revolver and a knife.
- (13) **Atone to (person) :** I tried to *atone to* him by offering market price of the land.
Atone for (action) : He tried to *atone for* the mischief he had committed.
- (14) **Award for (action) :** He was *awarded* a gold medal *for* winning 1000 Ft. race.
Awarded to (person) : A silver medal will be *awarded to* the best sports girl.
- (15) **Antidote to (medicine) :** Diamond is regarded as an *antidote to* the venom of the snake.
Antidote against (infection) : Quinine is an *antidote against* Malaria.
- (16) **Argue against or about (a matter) :** He went to *argue against* the topic of debate.
He *argued* well *about* the newly introduced bill.
Argue with (person) : Don't *argue with* me unnecessarily.
- (17) **Agree in (opinion) :** Ganesh *agrees* with Ram *in* opinion expressed by him.
Agree to (proposal) : I cannot *agree to* his proposal of dividing the property.
Agree with (person) : I fully *agree with* you on this issue.
Agree on (subject) : After a lot of discussion all *agreed on* the terms of agreement.
- (18) **Accomplice with (person) :** Her wife was an *accomplice with* the murderer.
Accomplice in (act) : His wife was an *accomplice in* the murder.
- (19) **Authority for (action) :** You have no *authority for* instructing me as such.
Authority on (subject) : She is indeed an unquestionable *authority on* Physics.
Authority over (person) : He has no *authority over* me officially.
- (20) **Accused of (a crime) :** He is an *accused of* murder.
- (21) **Accused by (a person) :** He was *accused by* his wife.

B

- (1) **Blush for (fault) :** She *blushed for* the misbehaviour of her husband.
Blush at (praise) : She *blushed at* the comments of her husband.
- (2) **Blind to (deeds, action) :** He should not be *blind to* the misdeeds of his son Rakesh.
Blind in (one eye) : His husband is *blind in* the right eye.
- (3) **Born of (parents) :** He was *born of* an orthodox mother.
Born at, in (place) : He was *born at* general hospital at Alwar in Rajasthan.
- (4) **Buy from (shop) :** You can *buy* this item *from* any grocery shop.
Buy for (person) : I *bought* this ball pen *for* my son.
- (5) **Beg of, from (person) :** I *begged of* him to give me some time to payback.
I *begged* some rice *from* him.
Beg for (person) : I *begged* him *for* some rice.

C

- (1) **Close to (adjective) :** His house is very *close to* the railway station.
Close with (shut) : She *closed* the door *with* a bang.
Close down (to terminate the operation) : He *closed down* his shop within six months.
Close out (to reduce the price) : He *closed out* the price of sugar to increase sales.
- (2) **Confer about (consult on a matter) :** Ram and Rahim *confer* together *about* nominating the secretary.
Confer with (consult with a person) : I will *confer with* my father in this matter.
- (3) **Contend for (thing) :** Mr. S.S. Shekhawat will *contend for* a seat in Legislative Assembly.
Contend with (person) : You should not *contend with* a person like Lalu Singh.
- (4) **Consist in (remain) :** The beauty of this building *consist in* its style and grandeur.
Consist of (composed of) : Our body *consist of* flesh, bone and blood.
- (5) **Condemn to (punishment) :** He was *condemned to* death by the judge.
Condemn for (crime) : He was *condemned for* murder by the court.
- (6) **Compare to (comparing two different kinds of things) :** Don't *compare* water *to* milk.
Compare with (comparing two things of same class) : Kalidas was *compared with* Shakespeare by several renowned scholars.
- (7) **Care for (like) :** I do not *care for* drinks.
Care about (thing) : She takes full *care about* her sarees and make up.
- (8) **Consult on (matter) :** We were not *consulted on* the new issue of debentures.
Consult with (person) : You should *consult with* some expert before taking a final decision.
- (9) **Controversy on (matter) :** A lot of *controversy* was raised *on* this issue.
Controversy with (person) : I do not have any *controversy with* any of the members on this matter.
- (10) **Confide to (to tell) :** You should not *confide* your secrets *to* any body.
Confide in (to pose confidence) : I *confided in* him, but he deceived me.
- (11) **Complain of (a thing) :** I *complained of* his misconduct to the boss.
Complain to (person) : I *complained of* his misbehaviour *to* his father.
- (12) **Compete with (person) :** Can you *compete with* him ?
Compete for (job) : I will try my best to *compete for* this job.
- (13) **Cause of (problem) :** He is the main *cause of* all this trouble.
Cause for (anxiety) : I do not have any *cause for* anxiety.
- (14) **Clothed in (dressing) :** She was *clothed in* a silken dress.
Clothed with (some quality) : She was *clothed with* modesty.
- (15) **Connect to (join) :** *Connect* the end of this rod *to* the other.
Connect with (relation) : I have no *connection with* her for the last three years.

D

- (1) **Displeased at (thing) :** She is not *displeased at* such humourous jokes.
Displeased with (person) : Ram is greatly *displeased with* Sita.
- (2) **Disqualified for (post) :** She was declared *disqualified for* the election.
Disqualified from (competing) : He was *disqualified from* taking part in the competition.
- (3) **Dwell upon (to speak) :** The Chairman *dwelt upon* the importance of truth and honesty.
Dwell in (country) : The French *dwell in* France.
Dwell at (place) : These days Ram is *dwelling at* his friend's hotel.
Dwell among (people) : He is *dwelling among* the tribal.
- (4) **Disgusted at (thing) :** She became *disgusted at* your silly joke.
Disgusted with (person or life) : I am very much *disgusted with* him.
- (5) **Deal with (to do with the matter) :** This book *deals with* the population problem in India .
Deal in (trade) : He *deals in* iron scrap.
Deal out (distribute) : The principal should *deal out* equal treatment to all the teachers.
- (6) **Differ on (point) :** I totally *differ on* this point.
Differ with (person) : I *differ with* you on this point.
Differ from (thing) : Your views entirely *differ from* that of mine.
- (7) **Die of (a disease) :** He *died of* hunger.
Die from (some cause) : He *died from* hard labour.
- (8) **Destined for (created for) :** God had *destined him for* the post of President of India.
Destined to (subject) : He is *destined to* such a pitiable condition.
- (9) **Dine with (person) :** I am scheduled to *dine with* him tonight.
Dine on (thing) : I can't *dine on* same kind of menu daily.
- (10) **Dispense with (do without) :** Jack can't easily *dispense with* her .
Dispense to (distribute) : A judge must *dispense* equal justice *to all*.
- (11) **Dispose of (to sell) :** She wants to *dispose of* all the goods at the earliest.
Dispose to (state of things) : The news of his father's death *disposed* him *to* a deep sorrow.
- (12) **Dispute with (person) :** Why are you *disputing with* your friends on such a trifle matter.
Dispute about (thing) : There was a great *dispute about* the nomination of chairman.

E

- (1) **Embark on (a vessel) :** She *embarked on* the ship for Srilanka.
Embark in (new business) : He has *embarked in* the new business with full fervour.
- (2) **Enter into (thing) :** They have *entered into* an agreement with Ramesh.
Enter upon (new course) : After marriage I *entered upon* a new way of life.
- (3) **Exchange for (thing) :** She *exchanged* a book *for* a piece of art.
Exchange with (person) : I want to *exchange* my views *with* you.
- (4) **Exult at (success) :** She was *exulted at* her brilliant success.
Exult over (an enemy) : Our army *exulted over* the enemy's force.
Exult in (misery) : One should not be *exulted in* the misery of others.

- (5) **Eager for (fame) :** She is very much *eager for* making a name in society.
Eager in (to find) : He has involved himself *eagerly in* pursuit of finding the cause of miseries in life.
- (6) **Equivalent for (word) :** Write a word *equivalent for* 'fear'.
Equivalent to (money, : thing) One million is *equivalent to* ten lacs.
- (7) **Exact from (person) :** Heavy fines were *exactd from* the unruly students.
Exact in (adjective) : He is not *exact in* repayment.
- (8) **Expert in (doing) :** He is *expert in* repairing automobiles.
Expert at (thing) : He is *expert at* English Grammar.
- (9) **Enquire of (person) :** I *enquired of* him the secret of his happiness.
Enquire into (a matter) : The police *enquired into* the case of bank robbery.
- (10) **Entrust with (a thing) :** I *entrusted* him *with* my camera.
Entrust to (person) : I *entrusted* my camera *to* him.

F

- (1) **Fit out (equip) :** The ship was *fitted out* for Srilanka.
Fit up (furnishing) : He *fitted up* his house with all necessary furniture.
- (2) **Fascinated with (person) :** I was *fascinated with* Rekha.
Fascinated by (thing) : I was *fascinated by* her manners and looks.
- (3) **False to (person) :** One should not be *false to* one's friends.
False of (thing, heart) : He is not *false of* heart.
- (4) **Fight for (defending) :** Our army is ready to *fight for* the country.
Fight with (together) : We must not *fight with* our friends.
Fight against (thing) : We must *fight against* the evil of illiteracy.
- (5) **Familiar to (thing) :** Your looks are quite *familiar to* that of Sachin.
Familiar with (person) : I am *familiar with* him.

G

- (1) **Gaze at (look attentively) :** Don't *gaze at* these girls, they are the cops .
Gaze on (look strangely) : He stood *gazing on* the pathetic scene of accident.
- (2) **Grieve for (person) :** She was extremely *grieved for* him.
Grieve at (event) : Everyone was *grieved at* the death of Rajeev Gandhi.
Grieve over (thing) : She *grieved over* my unfortunate loss.
- (3) **Good for (nothing) :** He is a *good for* nothing fellow.
Good at (something) : She is *good at* swimming.

H

- (1) **Held by (person) :** A condolence meeting was *held by* the staff yesterday.
Held in (esteem or contempt) : In the heart of every Indian, Gandhiji is *held in* great respect.
Held at (place) : A meeting was *held at* Hope Circus yesterday.

- (2) **Hear of (something) :** I *heard of* this robbery from Sarla.
Hear from (person) : I *heard* this robbery *from* Sarla.
Hear by (post) : I *hear by* this letter about your promotion.
- (3) **Happen to (person) :** Please tell me what *happened to* you in New York.
Happen at (place) : This event *happened at* Red Square.
Happen on (come across) : While returning from market I *happened on* a gang of thieves.
- (4) **Hidden from (view) :** The Neem tree has *hidden* your house *from* direct view.
Hidden by (person, thing) : My shoes were *hidden by* his sister.

I

- (1) **Introduce to (person) :** Let me first *introduce* my friend *to* you.
Introduce into (make modifications) : The UPSC has *introduced* many changes *into* the syllabus of IAS examination.
- (2) **Invest with (authority) :** The President *invested* him *with* the honour of Bharat Ratna.
Invest in (business) : I am ready to *invest* ₹ 50 lacs *in* this business.
- (3) **Inquire for (a thing) :** I went there to *inquire for* my lost brief case.
Inquire into (matter) : The police will *inquire into* the cause of death.
Inquire about (concern) : She came here to *inquire about* the health of her son.
Inquire of (asking) : First *inquire of* the way, then move.
- (4) **Involve in (thing) :** She seems to be *involved in* some serious trouble.
Involve with (person) : Don't *involve* yourself *with* such unruly persons.
- (5) **Irritated at (thing) :** I was greatly *irritated at* his unruly behaviour.
Irritated against (person) : She was extremely *irritated against* her husband.
- (6) **Impatient at (unexpected thing) :** He became *impatient at* the unexpected delay.
Impatient for (expected thing) : She is very much *impatient for* the arrival of her husband.
- (7) **Indebted for (thing) :** I am *indebted for* your timely help.
Indebted to (person) : He is greatly *indebted to* Rani for her timely help.

J

- (1) **Jest at (person) :** I don't like to *jest at* a lunatic person.
Jest with (thing) : We should not *jest with* the communal thing.
- (2) **Judge of (giving opinion) :** Without going in details, how can you *judge of* this matter.
Judge by (observing) : *Judging by* her qualifications, I think she is not fit for this job.

K

- (1) **Know by (recognise) :** A man is *known by* his actions.
Know for (quality) : He is *known for* his foolish decisions.

L

- (1) **Live at (a small town) :** He *lives at* Alwar in Rajasthan.
Live in (in country, big place) : He is *living at* Alwar *in* Rajasthan.
Live on (food) : He *lives* entirely *on* breads.
Live for (devote) : We must *live* and die *for* the cause of truth.
Live with (a person) : I *live* here *with* my parents.
- (2) **Liabile for (crime) :** You are *liable for* the death of your wife.
Liabile to (punishment) : He was held *liable to* imprisonment for three years.
- (3) **Listen for (sound) :** I am *listening for* the voice of Lata Mangeshkar.
Listen to (hear attentively) : We should *listen to* the advice of our elders.
- (4) **Laugh at (make fun) :** We must not *laugh at* our friends.
Laugh with (indulge with) : Better to *laugh with* disabled than to laugh at disabled.

M

- (1) **Married to (a woman) :** Ramesh was *married to* Sarla.
Married with (a man) : Sarla was *married with* Ramesh.
- (2) **Moved with (sorrow) :** He was actually *moved with* a feeling of sorrow.
Moved to (tears) : On hearing the news of sudden death of his wife, all *moved to* tears.
Moved from (one's determination) : You can't *move* me *from* my decision with your logics.
Moved at (a scene) : He was greatly *moved at* the sight of her mother's dead body.

O

- (1) **Obliged to (person) :** I am very much *obliged to* you.
Obliged at (thing) : I am *obliged at* your timely help.
- (2) **Occupied in (doing a job) :** He is fully *occupied in* writing a book.
Occupied by (thing) : That house is *occupied by* a marriage party.
- (3) **Originate with (person) :** All the plannings were *originated with* him.
Originate in (place, cause) : A fierce fire was *originated in* Connaught Place yesterday.

P

- (1) **Part from (person) :** I *parted from* my wife in Kumbh.
Part with (thing) : He is not ready to *part with* his furniture at any cost.
- (2) **Prepare for (be ready) :** I am *preparing for* the IAS examination this year.
Prepare against (danger) : We must *prepare* ourselves *against* the danger of water pollution.
- (3) **Pray for (thing) :** My wife *prayed for* my success.
Pray to (make prayer) : I *prayed to* God to help me in facing the unwarranted problems.
- (4) **Perish by (famine) :** Our district was *perished by* the drought last year.
Perish with (hunger) : During drought the cattle *perished with* starvation.

- (5) **Plead with (person) :** He *pleaded with* the Principal for mercy.
Plead for (thing) : He *pleaded for* the king for mercy.
- (6) **Play at (cards) :** They were *playing at* cards.
Play upon (musical instrument) : Harish *played upon* the violin in the party.

Q

- (1) **Quick in (doing) :** He is *quick in* solving questions.
Quick of (understanding) : Ramesh is *quick of* understanding the questions.
- (2) **Quarrel over (thing) :** You must not *quarrel over* the parental property.
Quarrel with (person) : We must not *quarrel with* our friends.

R

- (1) **Responsible to (person) :** An MLA is *responsible to* the Legislative Assembly.
Responsible for (action) : She is *responsible for* the loss caused due to her negligence.
- (2) **Reason with (person) :** I *reasoned with* him on each and every point in this matter.
Reason about (thing) : You can't *reason about* the importance of self-respect .
- (3) **Ready for (action) :** I am *ready for* the match.
Ready with (something) : I was totally *ready with* my arguments on that day.
Ready in (replying) : I always found her *ready in* her reply.
- (4) **Revenge on (person) :** He *revenged himself on* his enemy.
Revenge for (action) : I will positively *revenge for* the insult inflicted on me by her.
- (5) **Reduce to (to decrease) :** His salary was *reduced to* Rs four thousands only.
Reduce by (decrease by an amount) : His salary was *reduced by* three hundred rupees per month.

S

- (1) **Share of (thing) :** I must be paid my *share of* profit.
Share with (person) : I do not *share* my lunch *with* anybody.
- (2) **Skilful at (thing) :** He is *skilful at* numbers.
Skilful in (doing a thing) : He is *skilful in* mathematical calculations.
- (3) **Succeed to (property) :** He *succeeded to* his uncle's empire.
Succeed in (doing) : This time she *succeeded in* IAS examination.
- (4) **Start at (time) :** I *started at* 10 o'clock in the morning.
Start from (place) : I *started at* 10 o'clock in the morning *from* Delhi.
Started for (place) : I *started at* 7 o'clock in the morning *for* Delhi.
- (5) **Struggle for (thing) :** We have to *struggle hard for* keeping peace in the country.
Struggle with (person) : We should not *struggle with* our neighbours.
- (6) **Serve out (distribute) :** Sweets were *served out* to the audience.
Serve up (to give food) : A nice lunch was *served up* there in the function.
- (7) **Speak for (person) :** You go there, I have already *spoken for* you to the secretary.
Speak about (thing) : He is *speaking about* 'Unemployment Problem'.

- (8) **Starved to (death) :** She was *starved to* death by her husband.
Starved with (hunger) : He *starved with* hunger.
- (9) **Suited for (action) :** She is not *suited for* the role of vamp.
Suited to (occasion) : Sad song does not *suit to* such an occasion.
- (10) **Supply to (person) :** The Municipality is *supplying* water *to* all the colonies in the city.
Supply with (thing) : Government must *supply* poor *with* food and clothing.

T

- (1) **Thankful for (thing) :** I am really *thankful for* your timely help.
Thankful to (person) : I am very much *thankful to* you for your kind favour.
- (2) **Think over (to consider) :** The society agreed to *think over* the case in the next meeting.
Think on (meditate) : I have been *thinking on* this matter for the last many days.
- (3) **Trust in (person) :** *Trust in* God and work hard.
Trust to (thing) : I *trusted to* his words, and he was right.
- (4) **Tired of (disgusted) :** I am *tired of* your daily excuses.
Tired with (exhausted) : You seems to be *tired with* the long run.
- (5) **Talk with (person) :** I will *talk with* my father on this matter.
Talk about (thing) : I will *talk about* this matter with my parents.
Talk over (discuss) : All the members of the society *talked over* the issue for many hours.

U

- (1) **Useful for (thing) :** The bag is very much *useful for* carrying goods.
- (2) **Useful to (person) :** I found that these directives are *useful to* me for success in exam.

V

- (1) **Vote for (person) :** *Vote for* me please.
Vote on (a resolution) : After having cast *votes on* the resolution, all took lunch.
- (2) **Vexed with (person) :** Why are you *vexed with* your wife ?
Vexed at (thing) : He is *vexed at* my jokes.

W

- (1) **Wait at (place) :** I will *wait at* church near the hospital.
Wait for (person) : I will *wait for* you upto tomorrow.
- (2) **Wake up (to get up) :** She *wakes up* at 6 a.m. daily.
Wake from (to be awoken) : She *waked from* slumber and decided to take action.
- (3) **Warn against (an action) :** I have already *warned* you, *against* your such negligence.
Warn of (danger) : I have already *warned* you *of* the risk involved .

Z

- (1) **Zealous for (a thing) :** A dedicated worker is always *zealous for* achieving the target.
- (2) **Zealous in (a cause) :** We must be *zealous in* the cause of humanity.

Appropriate Prepositions

कुछ शब्दों के साथ सामान्यतया एक निश्चित Preposition का प्रयोग होता है। यद्यपि यहाँ भी वाक्य के अर्थ को समझना आवश्यक है, तथापि नीचे दिए गए शब्द एवं उनके साथ प्रयुक्त Prepositions को बार-बार Revise करने से Prepositions का सही प्रयोग समझ में आ जाता है। परीक्षाओं में Prepositions सम्बन्धी Questions अधिकतर निम्न पर आधारित होते हैं :

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Abundance of (wealth) | 2. Assent to (a proposal) |
| 3. Accustomed to (work) | 4. Avail ourselves of (an opportunity) |
| 5. Attain to (a position) | 6. Addicted to (drinking, wine etc.) |
| 7. Accede to (a request) | 8. Abstain from (food, indulgence etc). |
| 9. Absolved from (a promise, a sin) | 10. Acquiesce (an opinion, in proposal) |
| 11. Adhere to (principles) | 12. Afraid of (a ghost) |
| 13. Abhorrent to (good nature) | 14. Accession to (throne) |
| 15. Assure of (a thing) | 16. Absorbed in (study) |
| 17. Acquit (someone) of a charge | 18. Acquaintance with (a person) |
| 19. Beware of (cheating) | 20. Comply with (one's wishes) |
| 21. Condemn to (death) | 22. Cured of (a disease) |
| 23. Comply with (wishes) | 24. Conducive to (health) |
| 25. Despair of (success) | 26. Desirous of (doing something) |
| 27. Deprive of (something) | 28. Devoid of (quality) |
| 29. Duty of (the country) | 30. Eligible for (a post) |
| 31. Exception to (a rule) | 32. Excuse for (a fault) |
| 33. Envious of (a person or a thing) | 34. Exchange a thing with a person |
| 35. Elder to (some family member) | 36. Fatal to (one's cause) |
| 37. Fearful of (death) | 38. Furnish with (clothes) |
| 39. Greedy of (money) | 40. Heir to (ancestral property) |
| 41. Healed of (a disease) | 42. Hopeful of (success) |
| 43. Hostile to (a person) | 44. Hunger after (fame) |
| 45. Innocent of (a crime) | 46. Intimate with (a person) |
| 47. Invite to (dinner) | 48. Insist on a (thing) |
| 49. Intimate with (person) | 50. Impertinent to (elders) |
| 51. Invite to (dinner) | 52. Insight into (a matter or thing) |
| 53. Jealous of (a person) | 54. Keep to (the left, the point) |
| 55. Knock at (the door) | 56. Key to (success) |
| 57. Mourn for (the dead) | 58. Match for (a person) |
| 59. Mad with (anger) | 60. Motive for (an action) |
| 61. Need for (help) | 62. Need of (a thing) |
| 63. Notorious for (drinking, thing) | 64. Occur to (mind) |
| 65. Overwhelmed with (sorrow, grief) | 66. Pay for (one's mistakes) |
| 67. Passion for (study) | 68. Peculiar to (a person or a thing) |
| 69. Persist in (doing) | 70. Pity for (poor, downtrodden) |
| 71. Pleased with (a person) | 72. Preface to (a book) |
| 73. Proud of (a thing) | 74. Pride on (a thing) |
| 75. Prefer to (a thing) | 76. Refrain from (doing some wrong) |
| 77. Repent of (a mistake) | 78. Respectful to (a person) |

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 79. Rob (A person) of (a thing) | 80. Sentence to (punishment) |
| 81. Short of (money) | 82. Side with (a person) |
| 83. Shocked at (a loss) | 84. Superior to (a thing) |
| 85. Sure of (some fact) | 86. Search for (a thing) |
| 87. Sacred to (a cause) | 88. Triumph over (difficulties) |
| 89. Trouble to (person) | 90. Vain of (beauty) |
| 91. Want of (money) | 92. Wanting in (wisdom) |
| 93. Worthy of (a reward) | 94. Yield to (an enemy) |
| 95. Search for (a thing) | 96. Sacred to (a cause) |
| 97. Work at (subject) | 98. Surrender to (enemy) |
| 99. Stick to (point) | 100. Suspect of (something) |
| 101. Translate into (language) | 102. Touch upon (subject) |
| 103. Slur on (character) | |

High Frequency Prepositions

Preposition 'FOR' :

- (A) **The following nouns take the preposition 'for' after them :** apology, appetite, aptitude, affection, ambition, blame, candidate, contempt, craving, capacity, compassion, compensation, desire, esteem, fitness, fondness, guarantee, leisure, liking, match, motive, need, opportunity, partiality, pretext, passion, pity, predilection, remorse, relish.
- (B) **The following verbs take the preposition 'for' after them :** Atone, canvass, care, clamour, feel, hope, mourn, pine, start, stipulate, sue wish, yearn.
- (C) **The following adjectives and participles take the preposition 'for' after them :** anxious, celebrated, conspicuous, customary, designed, destined, eager, eligible, eminent, fit, good, grateful, notorious, prepared, proper, penitent, qualified, ready, sorry, sufficient, useful, zealous.

Preposition 'OF' :

- (A) **The following nouns take the preposition 'of' after them :** assurance, abhorrence, charge, distrust, doubt, experience, failure, observance, proof, result, want.
- (B) **The following adjectives and participles take the preposition 'of' after them :** accused, acquitted, afraid, apprehensive, apprised, assured, aware, bereft, bought, cautious, certain, characteristic, composed, confident, conscious, convicted, convinced, covetous, defrauded, deprived, desirous, destitute, devoid, diffident, distrustful, dull, easy, envious, fearful, fond, greedy, guilty, heedless, ignorant, informed, innocent, irrespective, lame, lavish, negligent, productive, proud, regardless, sanguine, sensible, sick, sow, subversive, sure, suspicious, tolerant, vain, void, weary, worthy.
- (C) **The following verbs take the preposition 'of' after them :** acquit, beware, boast, complain, despair, die, disapprove, dispose, divest, dream, heal, judge, repent, taste.

Preposition 'TO' :

- (A) **The following nouns take the preposition 'to' after them :** allegiance, approach, assent, alternative, access, accession, antidote, antipathy, exception, incentive, indifference, invitation, key, leniency, likeness, limit, menace, obedience, opposition, objection, obstruction, postscript, preface, reference, resemblance, repugnance, sequel, submission, supplement, succession, traitor, temptation.

(B) The following adjectives and participles take the preposition 'to' after them

- (i) acceptable, accessible, accustomed, abhorrent, addicted, adequate, adjacent, affectionate, agreeable, akin, alien, alive, amenable, analogous, applicable, appropriate, beneficial, callous, common, comparable, condemned.
- (ii) conducive, conformable, congenial, consecrated, contrary, creditable, deaf, derogatory, detrimental, devoted, disastrous, due, entitled, equal, essential, exposed, faithful, fatal, foreign, hostile, impertinent, incidental, inclined.
- (iii) Indebted, indifferent, indispensable, indulgent, inimical, insensible, injured, irrelevant, favourable, hurtful, immaterial, impervious, indigenous, liable, limited, lost, loyal, material, natural, necessary.
- (iv) offensive, opposite, obedient, obliged, painful, partial, peculiar, pertinent, pledged, preferable, prejudicial, prior, profitable, prone, relevant, repugnant, reduced, related, responsible, restricted, sacred, subject, suitable, sensitive, serviceable, suited, supplementary, true, tantamount.

(C) The following verbs take the preposition 'to' after them : accede, adhere, allot, aspire, assent, attain, allude, apologize, adapt, appoint, ascribe, attend, attribute, belong, consent, contribute, conduce, conform, lead, listen, object, occur, prefer, pretend, refer, revert, stoop, succumb, surrender, testify, yield.**Preposition 'FROM' :**

- (A) The following nouns take the preposition 'from' after them :** abstinence, cessation, deliverance, descent, digression, escape, exemption, inference.
- (B) The following verbs take the preposition 'from' after them :** abstain, alight, cease, debar, derive, derogate, desist, detract, deviate, differ, dissent, elicit, emerge, escape, exclude, preserve, prevent, prohibit, protect, recoil, recover, refrain.

Preposition 'IN' :

- (A) The following adjectives and participles take the preposition 'in' after them :** accomplished, accurate, assiduous, absorbed, abstemious, backward, bigot, correct, defective, diligent, deficient, experienced, enveloped, fertile, foiled, honest, implicated, interested, involved, lax, proficient, remiss, versed.
- (B) The following verbs take the preposition 'in' after them :** acquiesce, delight, employ, enlist, excel, fall, glory, increase, indulge, involve, persevere, persist.

Preposition 'WITH' :

- (A) The following adjectives and participles take the preposition 'with' after them :** acquainted, affected, beset, busy, compatible, complaint, consistent, contemporary, contented, contrasted, conversant, convulsed, delighted, deluged, disgusted, drenched, endowed, fatigued, fired, gifted, infatuated, infected, infested, inspired, intimated, invested, overcome, popular, replete, satisfied, touched.
- (B) The following verbs take the preposition 'with' after them :** associate, bear, clash, coincide, comply, condole, cope, correspond, credit, deluge, disagree, dispense, expostulate, fill, grapple, intrigue, meddle, quarrel, remonstrate, side, sympathize, trifle, vie.

Preposition 'ON' :

The following verbs take the preposition 'on' after them : comment, deliberate, decide, depend, determine, dwell, enlarge, embark, encroach, impose, insist, intrude, subsist, trample.



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01

Fill in the blanks with appropriate prepositions :

- (1) Ram killed the snake a stick.
- (2) He lives Alwar.
- (3) Rice is selling five rupees a kilo.
- (4) His car ran a dog.
- (5) He assured to stand me in all circumstances.
- (6) I will stand for my rights.
- (7) He put a coat of red colour.
- (8) He is proud his riches.
- (9) He lives Mumbai.
- (10) In general, acids act metals.
- (11) Ram was beaten by Mohan for no reason.
- (12) He sat the ground.
- (13) He fell the tree an axe.
- (14) An epidemic broke in the town last year.
- (15) I called her from a distant place.

02

Fill in the blanks with appropriate prepositions :

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| (1) He finished the work four hours. | (2) I took him a thief. |
| (3) Mahesh is now rid all his troubles. | (4) He sat me. |
| (5) He agreed my plan. | (6) The cat ran the mouse. |
| (7) He died heart failure. | (8) He fell the bed. |
| (9) They were walking the road. | (10) He rushed the pathway. |
| (11) He acted according my desire. | (12) We did it you. |
| (13) Anil goes to office car. | (14) Look the picture. |
| (15) He ran the room and sat his father. | |

03

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) You cannot prevent me to go to the market. | (2) She refrains to do this work. |
| (3) I insisted him to attend the class. | (4) He has a passion to learn English grammar. |
| (5) She is negligent to attend the meetings. | (6) She persisted to write again. |
| (7) He is bent to fight again. | (8) I am confident to win the match. |
| (9) He succeeded to pass the examination this time. | (10) I am proud to have a friend like Ram. |
| (11) I cannot hinder her to enter the temple. | (12) She is desirous to leave the place. |
| (13) Ram was disqualified to compete in this tournament. | (14) I cannot think to oppose him. |
| (15) He was prohibited to enter the temple. | (16) You should abstain to drink now. |
| (17) He intends to go to Jaipur. | (18) It is very difficult to dissuade him to go there. |
| (19) He is fortunate to get a ticket. | (20) I am hopeful to achieve success. |

04***Correct the following sentences :***

- (1) She was neither ashamed nor sorry for her misbehaviour.
- (2) She neither objected nor approved of it.
- (3) Ram has no interest and passion for cricket.
- (4) We must prevent damage and theft of public property.
- (5) Please listen and reflect on this topic afterwards.
- (6) He asked from her a silly question.
- (7) The police investigated into the case.
- (8) Ram resembles to his father.
- (9) She resigned from her post.
- (10) Ram signed to the agreement.
- (11) The poet described about the nature.
- (12) She must love to her children.
- (13) We have discussed on the merits of the issue.
- (14) In this article the author has described about poverty.
- (15) She criticised upon my action without logic.

05***Fill in the blanks with appropriate prepositions :***

- (1) Morning walk is beneficial health.
- (2) You are not eligible this post.
- (3) I find no exception this rule of grammar.
- (4) She has a great passion natural beauty.
- (5) You are very much weak mathematics.
- (6) Suitable reward is an important incentive hard work.
- (7) I am sick the whole episode.
- (8) He insisted complaining against the officer.
- (9) You are to conform the rules of the institute.
- (10) Your views don't accord mine.
- (11) She comes a very noble family.
- (12) His path is beset many difficulties.
- (13) You are addicted gambling.
- (14) Your scheme is adverse my career.
- (15) The court has restored the property its true owner.

06***Fill in the blanks with appropriate prepositions :***

- (1) This is subsequent my application dated 5th July.
- (2) This is consequent your application dated 10th August.
- (3) I am fond reading newspaper.
- (4) You have made all preparations the marriage.
- (5) I am proud my heritage.
- (6) He is a descendant king.
- (7) I have no trust him.
- (8) She has distrust you.
- (9) I feel shame her conduct.
- (10) I am much ashamed my son.
- (11) We must provide the bad days.
- (12) God will provide our necessities.
- (13) It is expected you to find the solution.
- (14) Such rude behaviour was not expected you.
- (15) I am disappointed you.

07*Fill in the blanks with appropriate prepositions :*

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) She jumped the well. | (2) There was no student the class. |
| (3) She agreed my scheme. | (4) Ram is sitting the kitchen. |
| (5) He lives Delhi. | |
| (6) Please close your office 9.30 pm positively. | |
| (7) She goes for a walk the morning daily. | (8) He is the top. |
| (9) Please sit the green chair. | (10) The dog jumped the cat. |
| (11) She is sitting the roof. | (12) The letter was written Shyam. |
| (13) He wrote a letter a pen. | |
| (14) A Banyan tree stands the Yamuna river. | |
| (15) He has a car a scooter. | (16) I will go to school next Monday. |
| (17) I know Hindi, Punjabi. | |
| (18) I haven't seen her the last three days. | |
| (19) I haven't seen her January. | (20) She turned pale fear. |

08*Insert 'for', 'during' or 'while' in the blanks :*

- (1) What did Ram say about me I was out of the room ?
- (2) Rahim read a number of books and magazines he was ill.
- (3) I went out for dinner last night. Unfortunately, I began to feel ill the meal and had to go home.
- (4) Please don't interrupt me I am speaking.
- (5) There were many interruptions the Chairman's speech.
- (6) Can you lay the table I get the dinner ready?
- (7) They hadn't had anything to eat..... they were travelling.
- (8) Manisha was very angry with me. She didn't speak to me a week.
- (9) We usually go out at weekend, but we don't often go out the week.
- (10) Kamlesh started a new job a few weeks ago. Before that he was out of work six month.
- (11) I need a change. I think I'll go away a few days.
- (12) The Chairman delivered a long speech. He spoke three hours.
- (13) We were hungry when we came. We hadn't had anything to eat the journey.
- (14) We were hungry when we came. We hadn't had anything to eat eight hours.
- (15) We met a lot of people we were on holiday.
- (16) We met a lot of people our holiday.
- (17) I met Manisha I was shopping.
- (18) we were in Agra, we stayed at a very comfortable hotel.
- (19) our stay in Agra, we visited a lot of museums and galleries.
- (20) The phone rang three times they were having dinner.
- (21) The phone rang many times the night.
- (22) I had been away for many years. that period, many things had changed.

09*Put 'by' or 'until' in the following sentences :*

- (1) I'm moving into my new house next month. I'm staying with a friend then.
- (2) Sorry, but I must go. I have to be at home latest 9 o'clock.
- (3) I've been offered a lucrative job my friend. I haven't decided yet whether to accept it or not. I have to decided next Monday.

- (4) I think I'll wait Sunday before making a final decision.
 (5) It's too late to go shopping. The shops are only open 9:30 pm. They'll be closed now.
 (6) I'd better pay the electricity bill. It has to be paid tomorrow positively.
 (7) Don't pay the bill today, wait next Monday, you can get some relief.
 (8) A : Have you finished redecorating your house?
 B : Not yet. We hope to finish the end of this fortnight.
 (9) A : I'm going out now. I'll be back at 7.30 pm. Will you still be there?
 B : I don't think so. I'll probably have gone out then.
 (10) Suresh has gone away. He'll be away Saturday.

10

Put 'at', 'on' or 'in' in the following sentences :

- (1) The telephone and the doorbell rang the same time.
 (2) Harish and Sarla always go out for a meal their wedding anniversary.
 (3) Ramu is 58. He'll be retiring from his job two years' time.
 (4) I've been invited to a wedding 15th August.
 (5) Hurry up! We've got to go five minutes.
 (6) I'm busy just now, but I'll be with you a moment.
 (7) Ram's brother is a banker, but he's out of work the moment.
 (8) There are usually a lot of parties New Year's Eve.
 (9) I hope the weather will be nice the weekend.
 (10) We travelled overnight to London and arrived 5 o'clock the morning.
 (11) The course begins 27th June and ends sometime August.
 (12) It was quite a short novel and easy to read. I read it a day.
 (13) He might not be at home Tuesday morning but he'll probably be there the afternoon.
 (14) My jeep is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready two hours.

11.

Choose the appropriate option and write it in the brackets.

- (1) The poor have to work morning to evening.
 (a) in (b) to (c) from (d) before ()
 (2) I go swimming every morning.
 (a) to (b) for (c) at (d) in ()
 (3) Never laugh the disabled.
 (a) on (b) from (c) to (d) at ()
 (4) Please wait me, I am coming within five minutes.
 (a) for (b) by (c) from (d) to ()
 (5) He fell love with Sakshi.
 (a) by (b) for (c) in (d) with ()
 (6) I got your parcel Tuesday.
 (a) since (b) for (c) to (d) on ()
 (7) She was married an early age.
 (a) for (b) of (c) at (d) in ()
 (8) His father died the age of sixty three.
 (a) at (b) in (c) for (d) of ()
 (9) They will go to Bangalore plane.
 (a) on (b) in (c) by (d) from ()

- (10) The man a beard is my brother.
 (a) in (b) of (c) for (d) with ()
- (11) I am grateful my friends for their moral support.
 (a) for (b) to (c) of (d) with ()
- (12) Gandhiji fought the freedom of our country.
 (a) by (b) in (c) of (d) for ()
- (13) This watch is a gift my uncle.
 (a) by (b) from (c) of (d) in ()
- (14) He spoke the subject for two hours regularly.
 (a) in (b) on (c) of (d) with ()
- (15) They will leave the place 10 pm
 (a) on (b) since (c) for (d) at ()

12.

Choose appropriate option and write it in the brackets :

- (1) She was punished stealing a saree.
 (a) for (b) by (c) with (d) from ()
- (2) The box belonged the landlord.
 (a) of (b) with (c) to (d) for ()
- (3) You must finish your project 5 o'clock positively.
 (a) in (b) for (c) till (d) to ()
- (4) Children are fond chocolates and computer games.
 (a) for (b) of (c) with (d) in ()
- (5) We get rains July every year.
 (a) for (b) to (c) on (d) in ()
- (6) His father died cancer.
 (a) in (b) of (c) by (d) for ()
- (7) He is not popular the students.
 (a) by (b) among (c) with (d) at ()
- (8) She has great love her children.
 (a) for (b) of (c) by (d) with ()
- (9) He was prevented going to college.
 (a) to (b) of (c) by (d) from ()
- (10) Listen what your teachers say.
 (a) at (b) in (c) to (d) for ()
- (11) Please beware the dog.
 (a) of (b) with (c) to (d) for ()
- (12) This book is a collection Shakespeare's poem.
 (a) for (b) of (c) with (d) by ()
- (13) They have quarrelled a piece of land.
 (a) at (b) on (c) for (d) over ()

13.

Choose appropriate option and write it in the brackets :

- (1) She wants to get rid the brown fox.
 (a) for (b) to (c) with (d) of ()
- (2) I was invited tea by his mother.
 (a) for (b) to (c) with (d) in ()
- (3) You cannot see germs naked eyes.
 (a) by (b) with (c) for (d) in ()

- (4) He is not interested playing and skiing.
 (a) in (b) for (c) by (d) of ()
- (5) He was fast asleep his bed.
 (a) into (b) in (c) by (d) for ()
- (6) We have a very good news him.
 (a) for (b) of (c) to (d) with ()
- (7) They have been reading 7 o'clock.
 (a) for (b) in (c) since (d) at ()
- (8) Never quarrel your friends.
 (a) to (b) with (c) by (d) over ()
- (9) The four brothers always quarrelled themselves.
 (a) to (b) between (c) for (d) among ()
- (10) There were several policemen duty on Republic Day.
 (a) to (b) on (c) for (d) at ()
- (11) These boys go to college college bus.
 (a) by (b) on (c) to (d) for ()
- (12) He is not an honest man. You cannot rely him.
 (a) to (b) for (c) at (d) on ()
- (13) He was fined driving negligently.
 (a) to (b) of (c) by (d) for ()
- (14) He is often late his dinner.
 (a) for (b) at (c) to (d) in ()
- (15) Try to reach the village the sunset.
 (a) before (b) by (c) from (d) of ()

14.

Choose appropriate option and write it in the brackets :

- (1) In the month of December the temperature falls 4°C.
 (a) from (b) below (c) at (d) into ()
- (2) A jeep hit him while he was going the main road.
 (a) on (b) across (c) behind (d) through ()
- (3) She is a noble family of Rajputs.
 (a) from (b) of (c) among (d) at ()
- (4) The case was put the judge and the judge decided it within an year.
 (a) at (b) from (c) before (d) of ()
- (5) The bridge this river was built in the year 1995.
 (a) at (b) over (c) above (d) on ()
- (6) She is suffering fever.
 (a) with (b) of (c) through (d) from ()
- (7) We saw wounded tiger while passing the forest.
 (a) from (b) through (c) along (d) among ()
- (8) Chairs are made wood.
 (a) of (b) from (c) on (d) through ()
- (9) There are tall beautiful coconut trees the river.
 (a) along (b) at (c) into (d) over ()
- (10) We are proud our children.
 (a) on (b) at (c) after (d) of ()
- (11) Mt Abu is about five thousand feet the sea-level.
 (a) above (b) along (c) after (d) behind ()

- (12) His birthday is next Sunday.
 (a) in (b) at (c) on (d) for ()
- (13) Ramesh fell down while he was running a bus.
 (a) into (b) after (c) over (d) through ()
- (14) Ramesh is the best all the other players.
 (a) into (b) among (c) above (d) between ()

15

Fill in the blanks with appropriate prepositions :

- (1) The meeting took place the company's corporate office. (at/to/on/by)
 (2) It was a very long voyage. We were sea for 50 days. (in/at/on/by/to)
 (3) I was reached last night. (in/on/at/by/for)
 (4) The train reached Kolkata main station. (in/on/to/at/by)
 (5) I lost my passport the way to India. (in/at/by/to/on)
 (6) He is a genius. He is the black lists of many casinos. (on/in/with/by/at)
 (7) We reached late at the cinema so we had to sit the back row. (on/in/at/to/by)
 (8) Is there anything interesting the paper today ? (on/by/in/at/from)
 (9) Have you ever been Mexico ? (in/on/by/to)
 (10) These books are ₹150/- each. (in/on/with/at)
 (11) Some people are prison for crimes they have not committed. (in/on/at/by/to)
 (12) I am really sorry, but you are standing my way. (on/in/at/with/behind)
 (13) There was a very serious accident the roundabout. (in/at/to/from)
 (14) In many countries people drive the left. (in/at/by/on/to)
 (15) I forgot my umbrella the bus. (in/into/by/onto/on)
 (16) I am love with her. (in/on/with/from)
 (17) We are offering solutions a price almost anyone can afford. (in/at/on/by/through)
 (18) He behaves just like his father. He really takes him. (to/from/after/by/at)
 (19) That old house is being offered sale. (in/at/on/for/by)
 (20) It is very difficult to enter partnership with a person you do not know very well. (to/on/by/with/into)

Spotting Errors (Prepositions)

16.

Read each sentence to find out whether there is an error in any part :

- (1) He was sleeping (a)/in his room when a thief (b)/entered into his house (c)/and took away a lot of things. (d)
- (2) In her concluding speech (a)/she said almost nothing (b)/worth listening to. (c)
- (3) It was apparent for (a)/everyone present (b)/that if the patient did not receive (c)/immediate medical aid (d)/he would die. (e)
- (4) He proposed me (a)/that we should go to the Disco (b)/and then have (c)/dinner at a restr. (d)
- (5) There appears (a)/to be a little liaison (b)/among the (c)/two groups of the society. (d)
- (6) The team (a)/complained to the manager (b)/against the captain (c)/and the poor facilities provided in the hotel. (d)
- (7) Yesterday I met (a)/a man (b)/who was blind with the right eye. (c)
- (8) The principal distributed (a)/the sweet among our friends (b)/who bade him farewell. (c)
- (9) As per the invitation care (a)/Rahim marries with Sayra (b)/on 13th December Monday. (c)
- (10) The debacle of the Congress party (a)/admit no other explanation (b)/than its (c)/poor performance during the last five years. (d)

17.

Read each sentence to find out whether there is an error in any part :

- (1) The society does not (a)/hold itself responsible (b)/for the loss or damage to (c)/ any item. (d)
- (2) In spite of being (a)/very busy at project work (b)/he saves time (c)/to the relatives. (d)
- (3) Some persons (a)/get promotions (b)/even if they are not (c)/worthy for them. (d)
- (4) While he was returning (a)/from the office (b)/a man attacked on (c)/him with a dagger. (d)
- (5) The decline of her moral (a)/was caused by a lot of (b)/factors that were once (c)/fascinating to her. (d)
- (6) He took me to a restras (a)/and ordered for two cups (b)/of cold coffee (c)/which the waiter brought in an hour. (d)
- (7) There are some animals (a)/than can live both in water and land (b)/without any difficulty. (c)
- (8) During his tour (a)/to the south (b)/he visited not only to Chennai (c)/but also Karnataka. (d)
- (9) The President Mr Kalam (a)/is much sought after (b)/by school students and (c)/is invited for many functions. (d)
- (10) His mother is not well (a)/but he (b)/ does not look for her (c)/properly. (d)

18.

Read each sentence to find out whether there is an error in any part :

- (1) We may have to await for (a)/a new political revival (b)/to eradicate the (c)/corruption from our economy. (d)
- (2) When she was (a)/in jail (b)/she was debarred to send (c)/a letter even to her son. (d)
- (3) Despite of the best efforts (a)/put by the doctors (b)/the condition of the patient (c)/is detereorating from bad to worse. (d)
- (4) The militant yielded for (a)/the temptation and fell (b)/into the trap (c)/of police. (d)
- (5) Many people in India (a)/are dying from hunger (b)/but government seems (c)/to be ignorant of such crude fact. (d)
- (6) In difficult times (a)/she prefers keeping her counsel (b)/rather than wandering (c)/here and there for relief. (d)
- (7) The persons who are (a)/suffering from diabetes are (b)/advised to substitute (c)/saccharine by sugar. (d)
- (8) He always says (a)/that he prefers to go (b)/home to stay in (c)/a hotel at night. (d)
- (9) Hardly had we settled down (a)/for the rest (b)/when we were started by the (c)/strange sound of trumpets. (d)
- (10) He was able to (a)/free himself with (b)/the debts by (c)/working day and night. (d)

19.

Choose the correct alternative with the correct choice given below each : [Income-tax Inspectors]

- (1) The shopkeeper does not have the toys, I was looking
(a) by (b) about (c) for (d) to
- (2) Books are very often compared a granary.
(a) with (b) to (c) by (d) at
- (3) Divide twelve mangoes three boys.
(a) to (b) for (c) between (d) among
- (4) To reach their village, they have to change a small train at the junction.
(a) on (b) to (c) over (d) into
- (5) Mohan will never pass his SSC examination he works hard.
(a) if (b) unless (c) since (d) because

- (6) If you live in a corrupt society, you cannot easily rise the prevailing corruption.
 (a) upon (b) over (c) above (d) beyond
- (7) It was the first time he had eaten a square meal he had left the village.
 (a) since (b) for (c) before (d) although
- (8) They are very grateful your kindness.
 (a) for (b) to (c) with (d) towards
- (9) His mother was 45, when she
 (a) had died (b) died (c) was dying (d) has died
- (10) There was nothing he could do wait.
 (a) and (b) except (c) otherwise (d) than

20.

Insert the prepositions where they are required :

[I.F.S.]

David felt sorry (1).....Mrs Micowber because he was always (2).....debt. David took books (3)..... the invitation of Mrs Micowber (4)..... the bookstall and sold them (5)..... whatever he could get. The wife (6)..... the booksellers usually paid (7)..... the books (8)..... shillings which David suspected she stole (9)..... her husband's pocket when he was lying (10)..... bed.

21.

Fill in the blanks in each of the following sentences with the appropriate prepositions :

- (1) Professor Krishna will take as the new Principal tomorrow. [IIT]
- (2) We all have to adjust ourselves new circumstances. [IIT]
- (3) Young fans clustered the film star. [IIT]
- (4) My son is apprenticed Mr Lal, Chartered Accountant. [IIT]
- (5) You will always be short of money if you live your means. [IIT]
- (6) He accused me selling secret information the enemy. [IIT]
- (7) Please write ink and put your name the top of the page. [IIT]
- (8) The man pipe and long hairs is the brother the girl. [IIT]
- (9) If you do not comply the traffic regulations you will get the trouble..... the police. [IIT]
- (10) She is now married a rich merchant. [IFS]
- (11) I correspond her regularly. [IFS]
- (12) The patient died fever. [IFS]
- (13) This election is different mine. [IFS]



SOLUTIONS

TEST YOURSELF Exercises

Solution TYE 01

- | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| (1) with, | (2) at, | (3) at, | (4) over, | (5) by, |
| (6) up, | (7) on, | (8) of, | (9) in, | (10) on, |
| (11) up, | (12) on, | (13) with, | (14) out, | (15) out. |

Solution TYE 02

- | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|--------------------|
| (1) in, | (2) for, | (3) of, | (4) beside, | (5) to, |
| (6) after, | (7) of, | (8) upon, | (9) along, | (10) into, |
| (11) to, | (12) for, | (13) by, | (14) at, | (15) into, beside. |

Solution TYE 03

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) You cannot prevent me from going to the market. | (2) She refrains from doing this work. |
| (3) I insisted him on attending the class. | (4) He has a passion for learning English grammar. |
| (5) She is negligent in attending the meeting. | (6) She persisted in writing again. |
| (7) He is bent on fighting again. | (8) I am confident of winning the match. |
| (9) He succeeded in passing the examination this time. | (10) I am proud of having a friend like Ram. |
| (11) I cannot hinder her from entering the temple. | (12) She is desirous of leaving the place. |
| (13) Ram was disqualified from competing in this tournament. | |
| (14) I cannot think of opposing him. | (15) He was prohibited from entering the temple. |
| (16) You should abstain from drinking now. | (17) He intends going to Jaipur. |
| (18) It is very difficult to dissuade him from going there. | (19) He is fortunate in getting a ticket. |
| (20) I am hopeful of achieving success. | |



Exercise 03 में ऐसे Verbs एवं Adjectives का प्रयोग किया गया है जिसके बाद Infinitive का प्रयोग नहीं किया जा सकता है। इन Verbs के बाद हमेशा Gerund (Verb + ing) का प्रयोग होता है।

Solution TYE 04

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) She was neither ashamed of nor sorry for her misbehaviour. | |
| (2) She neither objected to nor approved of it. | (3) Ram has no interest in and passion for cricket. |
| (4) We must prevent damage to and theft of public property. | |
| (5) Please listen to and reflect on this topic afterwards. | (6) He asked her a silly question. |
| (7) The police investigated the case. | (8) Ram resembles his father. |
| (9) She resigned from her post. | (10) Ram signed the agreement. |
| (11) The poet described the nature. | (12) She must love her children. |
| (13) We have discussed the merits of the issue. | (14) In this article the author has described poverty. |
| (15) She criticized my action without logic. | |



वाक्य (1) से (5) तक Ellipsis in Preposition के अन्तर्गत दो शब्दों के साथ एक ही Preposition लगाकर गलती की गई है। वाक्य (6) से (15) तक में Transitive verb के साथ Preposition लगाने की गलती की गई है।

Solution TYE 05

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|----------|----------|------------|
| (1) to, | (2) for, | (3) to, | (4) for, | (5) in, |
| (6) to, | (7) of, | (8) on, | (9) to, | (10) with, |
| (11) from, | (12) with, | (13) to, | (14) to, | (15) to. |

Solution TYE 06

- | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|
| (1) to, | (2) upon, | (3) of, | (4) for, | (5) of, |
| (6) of, | (7) in, | (8) of, | (9) at, | (10) of, |
| (11) against, | (12) for, | (13) from | (14) from, | (15) in. |

Solution TYE 07

- | | | | | |
|------------|---------------|------------|--------------|---------------|
| (1) into, | (2) in, | (3) on, | (4) in, | (5) in |
| (6) at, | (7) in, | (8) at, | (9) on, | (10) upon, |
| (11) on, | (12) by, | (13) with, | (14) beside, | (15) besides, |
| (16) from, | (17) besides, | (18) for, | (19) since, | (20) with. |

Solution TYE 08

- | | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| (1) while, | (2) while, | (3) during, | (4) while, | (5) during, |
| (6) while, | (7) while, | (8) for, | (9) during, | (10) for, |
| (11) for, | (12) for, | (13) during, | (14) for, | (15) while, |
| (16) during, | (17) while, | (18) While, | (19) During, | (20) while, |
| (21) during, | (22) During. | | | |

Solution TYE 09

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|----------------|
| (1) until, | (2) by, | (3) by, by | (4) until, | (5) until, by, |
| (6) by, | (7) until, | (8) by, | (9) by, | (10) until. |

Solution TYE 10

- | | | | | |
|--------------|----------|--------------|----------|--------------|
| (1) at, | (2) on, | (3) in, | (4) on, | (5) in, |
| (6) in, | (7) at, | (8) on, | (9) at, | (10) at, in, |
| (11) on, in, | (12) in, | (13) on, in, | (14) in. | |

Solution TYE 11

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| (1) (c), | (2) (b), | (3) (d), | (4) (a), | (5) (c), |
| (6) (d), | (7) (c), | (8) (a), | (9) (c), | (10) (d), |
| (11) (b), | (12) (d), | (13) (b), | (14) (b), | (15) (d). |

Solution TYE 12

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| (1) (a), | (2) (c), | (3) (c), | (4) (b), | (5) (d), |
| (6) (b), | (7) (b), | (8) (a), | (9) (d), | (10) (c), |
| (11) (a), | (12) (b), | (13) (d). | | |

Solution TYE 13

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| (1) (d), | (2) (b), | (3) (b), | (4) (a), | (5) (b), |
| (6) (a), | (7) (c), | (8) (b), | (9) (d), | (10) (b), |
| (11) (b), | (12) (d), | (13) (d), | (14) (a), | (15) (a). |

Solution TYE 14

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| (1) (b), | (2) (b), | (3) (a), | (4) (c), | (5) (b), |
| (6) (d), | (7) (b), | (8) (a), | (9) (a), | (10) (d), |
| (11) (a), | (12) (c), | (13) (b), | (14) (b). | |

Solution TYE 15

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|-------------|-----------|----------------------|
| (1) at, | (2) at, | (3) at, | (4) at, | (5) on, |
| (6) on, | (7) in, | (8) in, | (9) to, | (10) No preposition, |
| (11) in, | (12) in, | (13) at, | (14) on, | (15) on, |
| (16) in, | (17) at, | (18) after, | (19) for, | (20) into. |

Solution TYE 16

- (1) (c) entered into की जगह entered his ही आयेगा। go into, jump into हो सकता है। ध्यान रखें : entered upon a career, enter into a conversation, enter into a project/business आदि हो सकता है।
- (2) (c) listening to की जगह केवल listening ही होगा। यदि listen के बाद कोई object न हो, तो 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे:
Please listen to me. (object)
I was listening but heard nothing.
- (3) (a) apparent to होगा।
- (4) (a) proposed to होगा। suggested to, proposed to होता है।
- (5) (c) among की जगह between आयेगा। सामान्यतः between का प्रयोग दो के लिए तथा among का प्रयोग more than two के लिए किया जाता है।
- (6) (d) and about the poor होगा।
(I) complained to somebody (II) complained against somebody
(III) complained about/of something होता है।
- (7) (c) blind in होगा।
blind in left or right eye या blind of an eye या blind with both eyes आदि होता है।
- (8) (b) among की जगह amongst होगा।



यदि *among* के बाद वाला शब्द किसी vowel sound से उच्चरित (Pronounced) है तो *amongst* आयेगा। यदि consonant sound से उच्चरित (Pronounced) है तो *among* ही आयेगा। *among* एवं *amongst* दोनों का प्रयोग दो से अधिक के लिए किया जाता है। 'the' से पूर्व *among* या *amongst* में से किसी का प्रयोग हो सकता है। जैसे:

<i>among the girls</i>	Correct	<i>amongst the girls</i>	Correct
<i>among out members</i>	Incorrect	<i>amongst our member</i>	Correct
<i>amongst them</i>	Incorrect	<i>among them</i>	Correct

- (9) (b) with का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। जब marry का प्रयोग मुख्य verb के रूप में होता है, तो इसके साथ कोई preposition नहीं लगता है। जैसे:
Hari is married to Hina. Hari marries Hina on next Monday.
- (10) (b) admits of होगा। 'of' का प्रयोग admits के बाद होगा।

Solution TYE 17

- (1) (c) loss of होगा।



यदि दो words, or या and संयुक्त हों एवं अलग-अलग Prepositions लेते हों तो अलग-अलग prepositions लगाने आवश्यक हैं।

- (2) (d) to की जगह for का प्रयोग होगा। Save के साथ Preposition निम्न प्रकार से लगते हैं : Save for something, Save somebody from something.
(i) He has saved some money for medicines. (ii) She saved me from drowning.
- (3) (d) worthy of होगा। क्योंकि worthy के बाद of, preposition लगता है।
- (4) (c) On का प्रयोग अनुचित है। यदि attack का प्रयोग verb के रूप में किया जाये, तो इसके बाद object आता है। लेकिन यदि make के साथ attack का प्रयोग होता है, तो Preposition 'on' लगता है। China made an attack on India.
- (5) (a) decline in होगा। Decline of empire/decline of a man सही है। Decline in moral/Decline in prices में decline के साथ in आता है।
- (6) (b) order के बाद for का प्रयोग नहीं होगा, क्योंकि order एक transitive verb है, जिसके तुरन्त बाद object आता है।
(i) He ordered a glass of wine. (ii) He ordered him to go to market.

- (7) (b) on land आयेगा।



यदि दो words 'and' या 'or' से संयुक्त हों एवं दोनों के साथ अलग-अलग Preposition लगता हो, तो अलग-अलग Prepositions लगने चाहिए।

- (8) (c) to का प्रयोग गलत है। visited का प्रयोग जब एक verb के रूप में किया जाता है, तो इसके बाद object आता है लेकिन make के साथ जब visit का प्रयोग किया जाता है, तो 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
He made a visit to Agra last year.
- (9) (d) invited के साथ to का प्रयोग होगा for की जगह to लगायें।
(i) I was invited to a party. (ii) He was invited to lunch.
- (10) (c) look after होगा। look after का अर्थ है देखभाल करना।

Solution TYE 18

- (1) (a) await के साथ for नहीं लगेगा।
wait for होता है await for गलत है। जैसे :
(i) We are waiting for his arrival. (ii) We are awaiting his arrival.
- (2) (c) debarred from sending होगा।
debar/abstain/refrain के साथ from का प्रयोग + verb + ing का प्रयोग होता है।
He abstained from drinking wine.
- (3) (a) Despite के साथ of नहीं लगता है। Despite का अर्थ होता है In spite of.
- (4) (a) yielded to होगा। yield to का अर्थ होता है। समर्पण (yield to somebody, yield to something) करना।
(i) She yielded to her lover's wish. (ii) He yielded to his enemy.
- (5) (b) dying of hunger होगा। die of hunger/die of a disease होता है। die from over working/die from over drinking/die from food poisoning आदि होता है।
- (6) (c) rather than का अनुचित प्रयोग किया गया है। इसकी जगह 'to' का प्रयोग होगा। prefer, senior, junior, prior इत्यादि के साथ Preposition 'to' लगता है।
- (7) (d) by की जगह for का प्रयोग कीजिए। ध्यान दीजिए : substitute something for something होता है।
- (8) (c) to stay in की जगह rather than stay in होगा। जब prefer द्वारा दो verbs की तुलना की जाती है, तो prefer के साथ rather than का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :
She prefers to write rather than to speak on telephone.
- (9) (c) startled at होगा। surprised/startled/amazed/ astonished के साथ Preposition 'at' लगता है।
- (10) (b) free himself from होगा। free somebody from something या free from something होता है।

Solution TYE 19

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| (1) (c), | (2) (b), | (3) (d), | (4) (d), | (5) (b), |
| (6) (c), | (7) (a), | (8) (a), | (9) (b), | (10) (b). |

Solution TYE 20

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| (1) for, | (2) in, | (3) at, | (4) from, | (5) for, |
| (6) and, | (7) for, | (8) some, | (9) from, | (10) in. |

Solution TYE 21

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|--------------|---------------------|----------|
| (1) over, | (2) with, | (3) round, | (4) to, | (5) on, |
| (6) of, to | (7) in, at | (8) with, of | (9) with, in, with, | (10) to, |
| (11) to, | (12) of, | (13) from. | | |

Conjunctions

Conjunctions क्या है?

Conjunction ऐसा शब्द है, जो शब्दों या वाक्यों को आपस में जोड़ता है। इसे Sentence Linker भी कहा जाता है।

Definition : A Conjunction is a word that joins words or sentences together.

A Conjunction is a joiner, a word that connects (conjoins) parts of a sentence.

Look at the following sentences :

(a) He is honest and she is intelligent.

(b) I shall either read or write a book.

(c) Three and three make six.

(d) Suresh and Ganesh are friends.

वाक्य (a) एवं वाक्य (b) में Conjunction 'and' एवं 'or' दो वाक्यों को जोड़ने का कार्य कर रहे हैं, जबकि वाक्य (c) एवं (d) में Conjunction 'and' दो शब्दों को जोड़ने का कार्य कर रहा है।

Conjunctions are words that join clauses together to make sentences, and show how the meanings of the clauses relate to each other.

Kinds of Conjunction

Conjunctions को निम्नलिखित तीन भागों में वर्गीकृत किया गया है :

(A) Coordinating Conjunction

(B) Subordinating Conjunction

(C) Correlative Conjunction

(A) Coordinating Conjunction : ये Conjunctions दो समान Rank के Sentences या Words को जोड़ते हैं। इस तरह के मुख्य Conjunctions हैं: For, and, nor, but, or, yet, so. An easy way to remember these six conjunctions is to think of the word **FANBOYS**. Each of the letters in this somewhat unlikely word is the first letter of one of the Coordinating Conjunctions.

(B) Subordinating Conjunction : इन Conjunctions द्वारा एक Subordinating Clause को अन्य Clause से जोड़ा जाता है। (Subordinating Clause वह है जो अपने पूर्ण अर्थ के लिए अन्य Clause पर निर्भर होती है) इस तरह के मुख्य Conjunctions हैं : after, although, as, as if, as long as, as though, because, before, even if, even though, if, if only, in order that, now that, once, rather than, since, so that, than, that, though, till, unless, until, when, whenever, where, whereas, wherever, while.



Note that some of the Subordinating Conjunctions in the above examples like: after, before, since—are also prepositions, but as Subordinate Conjunctions they are being used to introduce a clause and to subordinate the following clause to the independent element in the sentence.

Examples :

- After : (a) We are going out to eat after we finish our work.
 (b) After the rain stopped, the dog ran into the mud to play.
- Since : Since we have lived in Mexico, we have gone to every exhibit at the Royal Hall.
- While : (a) While I was waiting in line for my turn, I ate my lunch.
 (b) Shalini steamed the corn while Jack fried the steaks.
- Although : Although the line was long and the wait over at least three hours, the exhibit was indeed worth it.
- Even if : Even if you have already bought your ticket, you will still need to wait in queue.
- Because : (a) I love her works because she uses color so brilliantly.
 (b) The snowman melted because the sun came out.
- Even though : Even though Jack fell asleep, the mobile salesman kept talking.

- (C) **Correlative Conjunction** : जो Conjunctions जोड़े (pairs) में प्रयोग किए जाते हैं, उन्हें Correlative Conjunction कहते हैं। जैसे: Either.....or, Neither.....nor, Both.....and, Whether... or, Not only.....but also.

Remember

Correlative Conjunctions are always used in pairs. They join similar elements. When joining singular and plural subjects, the subject closest to the verb determines whether the verb is singular or plural.

Important

Coordinating Conjunctions are the simplest kind, and they denote equality of relationship between the ideas they join. Their relatives, Correlative Conjunctions, not only denote equality, but they also make the joining tighter and more emphatic.

Coordinating and Correlative Conjunctions are great when two ideas are of the same importance, but many times one idea is more important than another. Subordinating Conjunctions are used to show which idea is more and which is less important. The idea in the main clause is the more important, while the idea in the subordinate clause (made subordinate by the Subordinating conjunction) is less important. The subordinate clause supplies a time, reason, condition, and so on for the main clause.

Conjunctive Adverbs

Conjunctive Adverbs make up an even stronger category of Conjunctions. They show logical relationships between two independent sentences, between sections of paragraphs, or between entire paragraphs. Conjunctive Adverbs are so emphatic that they should be used sparingly; however, when used appropriately, they can be quite effective.

Such Conjunctive Adverbs are : Also, hence, however, still, likewise, otherwise, therefore, conversely, rather, consequently, furthermore, nevertheless, instead, moreover, then, thus, meanwhile, accordingly.

Examples :

- (a) If the salmon is grilled, I will have that; otherwise, I might have the chicken.
- (b) James has a garage full of wood working tools. He might, however, have some metric wrenches, too.
- (c) I do not recommend that you play with a stick of dynamite lit at both ends. Rather, a ham sandwich would be better for you.

Expletives

Expletives are closely related to conjunctive adverbs. Expletives convey no meaning of their own, but instead serve only to emphasize the statement to which they are attached. As such, then, they technically do not show a logical relationship like time or cause between ideas, and that fact prevents them from being treated as conjunctive adverbs.

Such Expletives are : Of course, indeed, naturally, after all, in short, I hope, at least, remarkably, in fact, on the whole, I suppose, it seems, in brief, I think, clearly, assuredly, definitely to be sure, without doubt, for all that, in any event, importantly, certainly.

Conjunction/Relative Pronoun/Relative Adverb/Preposition

Conjunctions का कार्य मात्र वाक्यों या शब्दों को जोड़ना है, जबकि Relative Pronoun/Relative Adverb/Preposition न केवल Pronoun या Adverb या Preposition का भी कार्य करते हैं, बल्कि वाक्यों को जोड़ते भी हैं।

Look at the following sentences

- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| (a) This is the pen <u>that</u> she gifted me. | <i>Relative Pronoun</i> |
| (b) This the place <u>where</u> I was born. | <i>Relative Adverb</i> |
| (c) He sat <u>beside</u> Shyam. | <i>Preposition</i> |
| (d) He came <u>and</u> he worked. | <i>Conjunction</i> |

वाक्य (a) में 'that' Noun, pen को भी Refer कर रहा है एवं दो वाक्यों को जोड़ भी रहा है। इसी तरह वाक्य (b) एवं (c) में Underlined words, Adverb एवं Preposition का कार्य कर रहे हैं एवं दो वाक्यों को जोड़ भी रहे हैं, जबकि वाक्य (d) में Conjunction मात्र दो वाक्यों को जोड़ने का कार्य कर रहा है।

Use of Coordinating Conjunction

जैसा पूर्व में बताया गया है Coordinating Conjunctions समान Rank के दो वाक्यों को संयुक्त करते हैं।

AND

- To suggest that one work is sequential to another :
Kamini sent in her applications and waited by the phone for a response.
- To suggest that one work is the result of another :
Ramesh heard the weather report and promptly went to his house.
- To suggest that one idea is in contrast to another (frequently replaced by but in this usage) :
Naresh is brilliant and Shalini has a pleasant smile.
- To reflect an element of surprise (sometimes replaced by yet in this usage) :
Mumbai is a rich city and suffers from many elements of urban blight.
- To reflect that one clause is conditionally dependent upon another (usually the first clause is an imperative) :
 - Use your credit cards without care and you'll soon find yourself deep in debt.
 - Waste your time carelessly and you will soon find yourself out of time to prepare for the examinations.
- To suggest a kind of 'comment' on the first clause :
Rajesh became addicted to gambling—and that surprised no one who knew him.

BUT

- (a) To reflect a contrast that is unexpected in light of the first clause :
Johnny lost a fortune in the stock market, but he still seems able to live quite comfortably.
- (b) To reflect in an affirmative sense what the first part of the sentence implied in a negative way (sometimes replaced by on the contrary) :
The club never invested foolishly, but used the services of some intelligent counsellors.
- (c) To connect two ideas with the meaning of 'with the exception of, (and then the second word takes over as subject) :
Everybody but Jai Kishan is trying out for the team.

OR

- (a) To suggest that only one possibility can be realized, excluding one or the other :
You study hard for this exam or you will not get good marks
- (b) To suggest the inclusive combination of alternatives :
We can cook dinner tonight, or we can just eat leftovers.
- (c) To suggest a refinement of the first clause :
Saraswati College is the premier all-girls, college in the state, or so it seems to most Saraswati College alumnae.
- (d) To suggest a 'restatement' or 'correction' of the first part of the sentence :
There are no tigers in this sanctuary, or so our guide tells us.
- (e) To suggest a negative condition :
The sayings of one of the freedom fighters was very important 'Do or die'.
- (f) To suggest a negative alternative without the use of an imperative (see use of and above) :
They must approve his political style or they wouldn't keep electing him Chairman.

NOR

The Conjunction NOR is not used as often as the other Conjunctions, so it might feel a bit odd when nor does come up in conversation or writing. It is commonly used in the correlative pair, neither-nor (see below) :

- (a) He is neither sane nor intelligent.
- (b) That is neither what I said nor what I wanted to say.
'Nor' can also be used with other negative expressions :
- (c) That is not what I wanted to say, nor should you interpret my statement as an admission of guilt.

YET

The word YET functions sometimes as an adverb. It can be used reflecting several meanings : (i) in addition ('yet another cause of trouble' or 'a simple yet noble woman'), (ii) even ('yet more expensive'), (iii) still ('he is yet a novice'), (iv) eventually ('they may yet win'), (v) and so soon as now ('he's not here yet'). 'Yet' also functions as a Coordinating Conjunction meaning something like 'nevertheless' or 'but'.

- (a) Jack plays basketball well, yet his favourite sport is cricket.
- (b) The visitors complained a lot about the heat, yet they continued to play golf here every day.

FOR

The word 'FOR' is most often used as a preposition. It is also used, as a Coordinating Conjunction. Beginning a sentence with the Conjunction 'for' should be avoided. Its function is to introduce the reason for the preceding clause

- (a) Ramesh thought he had a good chance to get the job, for his uncle was on the company's board of directors.
- (b) Most of the visitors were happy just relaxing under the shade, for it had been a long, dusty journey on the cart.

SO

So, sometimes connects two independent clauses along with a comma, but sometimes it doesn't. For instance, in this sentence :

- (a) He is not the only Olympic athlete in his family, so are his brother, sister, and his niece Chetna. Here the word so means 'as well' or 'in addition'.
In the following sentence, 'So' means 'therefore', the Conjunction and the comma are adequate to the task :
- (b) She has always been nervous in large gatherings, so it is no surprise that she avoids crowds of her fans.
When 'So' is used at the beginning of a sentence, it will act as a kind of summing up word, in that case comma is used after it (So) as following :
- (c) So, the Judge peremptorily removed the child from the custody of the claimants.

Subordinating Conjunctions

जैसा पूर्व में बताया गया है Subordinating Conjunctions, एक Subordinate Clause को दूसरी Clause से जोड़ते हैं।
I purchased a pen, because I had no pen.

'because I had no pen' एक Subordinate Clause है जो अपने पूर्ण अर्थ के लिए अन्य Clause पर निर्भर है। 'because' एक Subordinating Conjunction है।

इस तरह के मुख्य Conjunctions हैं : after, because, that, though, although, till, before, unless, as, when, where, while etc.

Subordinating Conjunction को इनके द्वारा व्यक्त कार्य/अर्थ के अनुसार निम्न भागों में वर्गीकृत किया गया है :

- (1) **Time** : ये Conjunction, समय के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। इस तरह के Conjunctions हैं : when, whenever, till, until, before, after, as soon as, as, since, while etc.

Read the following sentences :

- (a) When I went to office, the peon was going to his house.
- (b) I have been searching her since I met her.
- (c) Ramesh went to his home, after he completed his work.
- (d) You should complete the work, before you go to market.
- (e) Make hay while the sun shines.
- (f) I will start the business, as soon as I get the licence.
- (g) He will stay in office until you reach there.

यहाँ Subordinating Conjunction, समय के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

- (2) **Cause or Reason** : ये Conjunction, वाक्य में कार्य के Cause या Reason के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। इस तरह के मुख्य Conjunctions हैं : as, because, since etc.

Read the following sentences :

- (a) I telephoned to her father as she was not available in office.
- (b) He is allowed to enter as he is invited by us.
- (c) I can't buy this car, since it is very costly.
- (d) She is crying because someone has stolen her purse.

यहाँ Subordinating Conjunction कार्य के कारण के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

- (3) **Purpose** : वाक्य में Purpose को व्यक्त करने वाले Conjunctions मुख्यतया ये हैं : that, so that, in order that, lest etc.

Read the following sentences :

- (a) We eat that we may live. (b) He came here, so that he can discuss the plan.
(c) Run fast lest you should miss the train. (d) He is working hard in order that he can succeed.

यहाँ Subordinating Conjunctions, purpose के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

- (4) **Result or Consequences** : परिणाम (Result) के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त होने वाले Conjunctions इस श्रेणी में आते हैं। इस तरह के Conjunctions हैं : so that, such that, that etc.

Read the following sentences :

- (a) The coffee is so hot that I can't drink it.
(b) He spoke in such a loud voice that everyone could hear him well.
(c) She is such a nasty girl that you can't rely on her .

- (5) **Condition** : शर्त के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त होने वाले Conjunctions; जैसे : If, unless, provided, that, supposing etc.; इस श्रेणी में आते हैं।

Read the following sentences :

- (a) You cannot succeed unless you work hard. (b) He will help you if you ask him.
(c) I will pay your dues provided you allow proper discount.
(d) He will be penalised provided that the charges are proved.
(e) Supposing you won a lottery, what would you do?

- (6) **Place** : इन Conjunctions का प्रयोग स्थान के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। इस तरह के मुख्य Conjunctions हैं : where, wherever, whither (to what place), whence (from what place) etc.

Read the following sentences :

- (a) I found my purse where I left it. (b) Let her go wherever she likes to go.
(c) Can you inform me whither she has gone? (d) He went back whence he came.

Whence का अर्थ from what place होता है, अतः whence के साथ from का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

- (7) **Comparison** : इन Conjunctions का प्रयोग तुलना के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है।

Read the following sentences :

- (a) He is as strong as your brother. (b) She is as intelligent as her brother.
(c) He is not so intelligent as her brother. (d) He is not so strong as your brother.

As as का प्रयोग likeness समानता हेतु जबकि so as का प्रयोग Negative वाक्यों में unlikeliness हेतु किया जाता है।

- (8) **Concession** : इन Conjunctions का प्रयोग रियायत (Concession) के सन्दर्भ में होता है। इस तरह के Conjunctions हैं : Though, although, yet, notwithstanding, however etc.

Read the following sentences :

- (a) She is poor yet she is trustworthy.
(b) I shall not meet her though she comes.
(c) Although he is intelligent, he is simple.
(d) I didn't support him, however I didn't oppose him.
(e) He passed the examination notwithstanding he was not fully prepared.

इस तरह के Subordinating Conjunctions एक प्रकार की रियायत के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

- (9) **Manner** : ये Conjunctions कार्य विधि को स्पष्ट करते हैं। इस तरह के Conjunctions हैं : as, as though, so far as etc.

Read the following sentences :

- (a) He spoke as if he was drunk. (b) She was speaking the truth so far I could judge.
(c) He acted upon as he was instructed. (d) He protested as though he were in opposition.

इन वाक्यों में Subordinating Conjunctions of Manner का प्रयोग हुआ है।

Copulative Conjunctions

Copulative Conjunctions का कार्य मात्र दो वाक्यों को आपस में संयुक्त करना है। इस तरह के Conjunctions हैं : and, and also, as well as, Both ... and, well, now etc.

Read the following sentences :

- (a) He came and wrote an application. (b) Suresh is a hard worker and his son also.
(c) Both Ram and Shyam will attend the party. (d) Ram has arrived now you can take rest.
(e) Ram as well as his brother was present in the meeting.
(f) You have finished your work, well you can go.

जैसा उक्त वाक्यों से स्पष्ट होता है, वाक्य (a) में दो वाक्य, (i) He came, (ii) He wrote an application को 'and' Conjunction की सहायता से जोड़ा गया है।

Alternative Conjunctions

इस तरह के Conjunction द्वारा ऐसे वाक्यों को जोड़ा जाता है जिनमें कोई विकल्प (Alternate) व्यक्त किया जाता है। इस तरह के Conjunctions हैं : or, else, otherwise, either or, Neither nor etc.

Look at the following sentences :

- (a) He should join or he will be terminated. (b) Ram, move fast else you will be late.
(c) Ram, move fast otherwise you will miss the train.
(d) Either obey the orders or leave the job. (e) Neither he nor she was present in the party.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में विकल्प व्यक्त हो रहा है, अतः Alternative Conjunctions का प्रयोग किया गया है।

Adversative Conjunction

ये Conjunctions दो विरोधात्मक वाक्यों को संयुक्त करने हेतु प्रयोग में आते हैं। इस तरह के Conjunctions हैं : however, but, still, yet, only, nevertheless, while etc.

Look at the following sentences :

- (a) He was not sincere however he got promotion. (b) He is poor, but he is trustworthy.
(c) He is rich yet he is not honest. (d) He is poor yet he has self respect.
(e) He is rich nevertheless he refused to help him.

जब दो वाक्यों में विरोधात्मक तथ्यों अथवा कथनों को व्यक्त किया जाता है, तो ऐसे वाक्यों को Adversative Conjunctions द्वारा संयुक्त किया जा सकता है।

Illative (Inferential) Conjunctions

इस तरह के Conjunction द्वारा ऐसे वाक्यों को संयुक्त किया जाता है जिनमें एक वाक्य दूसरे वाक्य का Inference है, परिणाम है। इस तरह के Conjunctions हैं : for, so, therefore etc.

Read the following sentences :

- (a) Something has broken, for I have heard a splash. (b) You are in power, so you are respected.

(c) You worked hard therefore you secured good marks.

(d) He secured good marks, for he worked hard.

उक्त वाक्यों से स्पष्ट है कि एक वाक्य दूसरे वाक्य का परिणाम है।

Some Important Conjunctions

(1) **Not only but also** : इससे जोड़े जाने योग्य वाक्य निम्नलिखित दो प्रकार के हो सकते हैं :

(A) जब दोनों वाक्यों में कर्ता एक हो।

(Same Subject)

(B) जब दोनों वाक्यों में कर्ता अलग हो।

(Different Subjects)

(A) **जब कर्ता एक हो (When subject is same) :**

Look at the following sentences

(i) (a) Sita is playing chess.

(b) Sita is watching T.V.

Sita is not only playing chess but also watching T.V.

(ii) (a) Nisha eats an orange.

(b) Nisha cooks food.

Nisha not only eats an orange but also cooks food.

(iii) (a) Girls are watching T.V.

(b) Girls are making a noise.

Girls are not only watching T.V. but also making a noise.



ऐसे वाक्यों को *Not only.....but also* से संयुक्त करने हेतु निम्न नियमों का पालन करें :

- (1) दोनों वाक्यों का जो *Common part* (समान हिस्सा) है पहले उसे लिखें, फिर *not only* लिखें। उसके बाद पहले वाक्य का शेष भाग वैसा का वैसा ही दें।
- (2) इसके बाद *but also* लिखकर, दूसरे वाक्य का (*Common* वाले *part* को छोड़कर) शेष भाग लिख दें।

वाक्य (i) को उपरोक्त नियमों के आधार पर जोड़ने पर सबसे पहले दोनों वाक्यों का *Common Part* - Sita is लिखा फिर हमने *not only* लिखा।

Sita is not only playing chess

इसके बाद *but also* लिखा।

Sita is not only playing chess but also

अब दूसरे भाग का शेष भाग watching T.V. लिखा।

Sita is not only playing chess but also watching T.V.

इस प्रकार हमारा वाक्य पूरा हो जाता है।

(B) **जब कर्ता अलग-अलग हों (When subjects are different) :**

Look at the following sentences :

(i) (a) Hina is watching T.V.

(b) Sheela is watching T.V.

Not only Hina, but also Sheela is watching T.V.

(ii) (a) Ram will play football.

(b) Shyam will play football.

Not only Ram but also Shyam will play football.

(iii) (a) The teacher is talking.

(b) The girls are talking.

Not only the teacher but also the girls are talking.



(1) जब *Subject* अलग है तो सबसे पहले *Not only* लिखकर वाक्य शुरू करें फिर पहले वाक्य का *Subject* लिखें उसके बाद *but also* लिखें एवं दूसरे वाक्य का *Subject* लिखें।

(2) उसके बाद दोनों वाक्यों का *Common part* लिखें।

(3) *but also* के बाद जो *verb* लगेगी वह उसके पास वाले *Subject* के अनुसार लगेगी, यदि *not only* के पास वाला *Subject plural* है तो *verb, plural* लगेगी एवं यदि *Subject singular* है तो *verb* भी *singular* ही लगेगी। जैसा कि वाक्य (iii) से स्पष्ट है।

Very Important Point

- (1) Not only but also एक Correlative Conjunction है। इसमें मुख्य बिन्दु यह है कि यदि not only का प्रयोग noun से पूर्व हुआ है तो but also का प्रयोग भी noun से पूर्व ही होना चाहिए। यदि not only का प्रयोग verb से पूर्व हुआ है तो but also का प्रयोग भी verb से पूर्व होना आवश्यक है।

Look at the following sentences :

- (a) Ram is watching not only T.V. but also playing football. *Incorrect*
 Ram is not only watching T.V. but also playing football. *Correct*

वाक्य (a) में not only का प्रयोग noun (T.V.) के पूर्व हुआ है, जबकि but also का प्रयोग verb (playing) के पूर्व हुआ है। अतः गलत है।

- (b) Not only Ram gave me five coins, but also thanked me. *Incorrect*
 Ram not only gave me five coins, but also thanked me. *Correct*

यह नियम सभी Correlative Conjunctions; जैसे : Either or, Neither nor, Both and, Though yet, Whether or इत्यादि; में समान रूप से लागू होता है। यह एक महत्वपूर्ण बिन्दु है।

- (2) **Neither nor** : इसके लिए दोनों वाक्यों का negative होना आवश्यक है।

(A) जब कर्ता एक ही हो (When subject same) :

Look at the following sentences :

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| (i) (a) Mohan is not a student.
Mohan is neither a student nor a player. | (b) Mohan is not a player. |
| (ii) (a) She is not cooking.
She is neither cooking nor watching T.V. | (b) She is not watching T.V. |
| (iii) (a) Suresh does not play.
Suresh neither plays nor reads | (b) Suresh does not read. |



- (1) जब Subject एक ही है तो इस तरह वाक्यों के common भाग को सबसे पहले लिखें, फिर neither लिखें। उसके बाद पहले वाक्य का शेष भाग लिख दें। उसके बाद nor लिखें।
 ध्यान रखें यदि Article a/an का प्रयोग हुआ है तो वह दोनों बार अलग-अलग लिखा जायेगा।
- (2) उसके बाद दूसरे वाक्य के common भाग को छोड़कर शेष भाग लिख दें।
- (3) ध्यान रखें दोनों वाक्यों में आया 'not' नहीं लिखना है। Subject singular है तो verb भी singular लगती है।
- (4) यह भी ध्यान रखें कि neither एवं nor दोनों का प्रयोग दोनों भागों में noun/object/verb के सामने समान होगा। यदि neither के बाद noun आया है तो nor के बाद भी noun ही आयेगा।

- | | |
|--|--|
| (iv) (a) He does not play football.
He neither plays football nor hockey. | (b) He does not play hockey.
<i>Incorrect</i>
He plays neither football nor hockey. <i>Correct</i> |
|--|--|

(B) जब कर्ता अलग-अलग हों (When subjects are different) :

Look at the following sentences :

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| (i) (a) Suresh is not going to Delhi.
Neither Suresh nor Ramesh is going to Delhi. | (b) Ramesh is not going to Delhi. |
| (ii) (a) Kali does not read.
Neither Kali nor Nisha reads. | (b) Nisha does not read. |
| (iii) (a) Kukku will not take tea.
Neither Kukku nor Harsh will take tea. | (b) Harsh will not take tea. |



(1) सबसे पहले Neither लिखें, फिर वाक्य को लिखें, फिर पहले वाक्य का subject लिखें। इसके बाद nor लिखकर दूसरे वाक्य का subject लिखें, फिर common भाग लिखें।

(2) Nor के बाद लगने वाली verb, nor के साथ लगने वाले subject के अनुसार लगती है। वाक्य (ii) में verb reads लगी है। verb का ध्यान रखें। ऐसे अन्य वाक्य देखें।

(iv) (a) They do not play cricket.
Neither they nor he plays cricket.

(b) He does not play cricket.

(v) (a) He does not write a letter.
Neither he nor they write a letter.

(b) They do not write a letter.

(Verb should agree with the nearest subject.)

(3) Either or : जब दोनों वाक्य affirmative में हों, तो इन्हें conjunction द्वारा जोड़ा जा सकता है।
Neither nor एवं either or हेतु दो वाक्यों को जोड़ने के नियम समान हैं।

(A) जब कर्ता एक हो (When subject is same) :

Look at the following sentences :

(i) (a) Rajesh plays chess.

(b) Rajesh watches T.V.

Rajesh either plays chess or watches T.V.

(ii) (a) She writes a lesson.

(b) She reads a book.

She either writes a lesson or reads a book.

(iii) (a) Sita plays chess.

(b) Sita plays cricket.

Sita plays either chess or cricket.

(B) जब कर्ता अलग-अलग हों (When subjects are different) :

Look at the following sentences :

(i) (a) She plays cricket.

(b) I play cricket.

Either she or I play cricket.

(ii) (a) Mahesh is playing.

(b) They are playing.

Either Mahesh or they are playing.

(iii) (a) She will go to Mumbai.

(b) They will go to Mumbai.

Either she or they will go to Mumbai.

(4) Both and

(A) जब कर्ता एक हो (When subject is same)

Look at the following sentences :

(i) (a) I am a teacher.

(b) I am an author.

I am both a teacher and an author.

(ii) (a) He will buy a car.

(b) He will buy a book.

He will buy both a car and a book.

(iii) (a) Ram can write.

(b) Ram can teach.

Ram can both write and teach.



Conjunction Both..... and पर भी वही नियम लागू होते हैं जो Neither..... or, Not onlybut also, Either.....or पर लागू होते हैं।

(B) जब कर्ता अलग-अलग हों (When subjects are different) :*Look at the following sentences :*

- (i) (a) He is my friend. (b) She is my friend.
Both he and she are my friends.
- (ii) (a) He is going to market. (b) She is going to market.
Both he and she are going to market.
- (iii) (a) Ram will go to Jaipur. (b) Shyam will go to Jaipur.
Both Ram and Shyam will go to Jaipur.



- (a) जैसा पूर्व में स्पष्ट किया है, Both and, Conjunction द्वारा दो वाक्यों को जोड़ने पर सामान्यतया वे ही नियम लागू होते हैं जो Not only but also, Neither nor, Either or पर लागू होते हैं।
- (b) Both and का प्रयोग दो Individual subjects के लिए ही किया जाता है। यदि एक कर्ता He एवं दूसरा कर्ता they है तो conjunction का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।
- (c) दोनों कर्ता singular होने की स्थिति में Conjunction Both...and का प्रयोग करने पर verb plural हो जाती है। [देखे वाक्य संख्या (i) और (ii)]

(5) So that : Conjunction so ... that का प्रयोग सामान्यतया too ... to के प्रयुक्त वाक्य के transformation में किया जाता है।*Read the following sentences :*

- (a) He is too weak to walk. He is so weak that he cannot walk.
- (b) She is too old to climb up the hill. She is so old that she cannot climb up the hill.
- (c) He was too tired to do any work. He was so tired that he couldn't do any work.
- (d) Rahul was too puzzled to speak anything properly.
Rahul was so puzzled that he could not speak anything properly.



- (a) 'too.....to' का प्रयोग करने वाले वाक्यों में जब sothat का प्रयोग किया जाता है, तो ध्यान रखें कि too की जगह so का प्रयोग करें, फिर too के बाद प्रयुक्त शब्द को लिखें।
- (b) फिर that लिखकर subject को लिखें। इसके बाद cannot लिखकर वाक्य में प्रयुक्त verb एवं object को लिख दें।
- (c) यदि वाक्य Past tense में है तो cannot की जगह could not का प्रयोग किया जायेगा। so that का प्रयोग negative वाक्यों में किया जाता है।

(6) No sooner than :*Look at the following sentences :*

- (i) (a) She arrives. (b) She begins to clean the house.
No sooner does she arrives than she begins to clean the house.
- (ii) (a) The bell rang. (b) The students came out of their classes.
No sooner did the bell ring than the students came out of their classes.
- (iii) (a) I had reached the station. (b) The train departed.
No sooner had I reached the station than the train departed.



- (1) No sooner के बाद (वाक्यों के Tense के अनुसार) helping verb; do/does/ did/had/had का प्रयोग होता है तथा फिर than का प्रयोग उक्त अनुसार होता है।
- (2) Than की Spelling का ध्यान रखें यह 'Then' नहीं है।

(7) Hardly had when :*Look at the following sentences :*

- (i) (a) She reached the station. (b) The train arrived.
Hardly had she reached the station when the train arrived.
- (ii) (a) He reached here. (b) She went to market.
Hardly had he reached here when she went to market.



- (1) Hardly के साथ when का प्रयोग होता है, than या अन्य Conjunction का नहीं।
(2) Hardly had लिखकर, पहला वाक्य पूरा लिख दें, फिर when लिखकर दूसरा वाक्य लिख दें।
(3) Hardly had के बाद verb की third form लगेगी, यह एक महत्वपूर्ण बिन्दु है, इसका ध्यान रखें।

(8) As soon as :*Look at the following sentences*

- (i) (a) She reached the station. (b) The train arrived.
As soon as she reached the station, the train arrived.
- (ii) (a) He reached here. (b) She went to market.
As soon as he reached here, she went to market.



As soon as शुरू में लिखकर पहला वाक्य पूरा लिख दें। उसके बाद comma लगाकर दूसरा वाक्य पूरा लिख दें।

Conjunctions : Who, Whom, Whose, Which, When, Where

ये Conjunctions, प्रश्न बनाने हेतु भी प्रयोग में आते हैं एवं दो वाक्यों को संयुक्त करने में भी प्रयुक्त होते हैं। इनका अर्थ प्रश्न करते समय एवं दो वाक्यों को संयुक्त करते समय अलग-अलग होता है।

(1) Who :*Type I – Look at the following sentences :*

- (i) (a) I saw a woman. (b) She wore a red saree.
I saw a woman, who wore a red saree.
- (ii) (a) Police arrested a thief. (b) The thief was running.
Police arrested a thief, who was running.
- ‘Who’ का Conjunction की तरह जब प्रयोग किया जाता है, तो अर्थ होता है : ‘जो’ या ‘जिसने’



- (1) इस तरह के वाक्यों में, पहले वाक्य को पूरा लिखें। उसके बाद, दूसरे वाक्य के subject हेतु ‘who’ का प्रयोग करके वाक्य को भी पूरा लिख दें।
(2) यहाँ ‘who’ एक subject की तरह कार्य कर रहा है।

Type II – Look at the following sentences :

- (i) (a) Sheela secured first position. (b) She belonged to Assam.
Sheela, who belonged to Assam, secured first position. Or
Sheela, who secured first position, belonged to Assam.
- (ii) (a) Ramesh failed again. (b) He did not work hard.
Ramesh, who didn’t work hard, failed again. Or
Ramesh, who failed again, didn’t work hard.



- (1) इस तरह के वाक्यों को दो प्रकार से 'who' से जोड़ा जा सकता है, प्रथम प्रकार में पहले sentence का subject लिखकर, उसके बाद 'who' लिखें फिर दूसरे sentence के subject को छोड़कर पूरा वाक्य लिख दें। फिर comma लगाकर पहले वाक्य के शेष भाग को लिख दें। यहाँ देखें कि दूसरे वाक्य के subject की जगह हमने 'who' का प्रयोग किया है।
- (2) दूसरे तरीके में प्रथम वाक्य का subject लिखकर 'who' लिखें एवं पहले वाक्य का शेष भाग लिख दें, उसके बाद comma लगाकर, दूसरे वाक्य के subject को छोड़कर शेष वाक्य लिख दें।

See more examples :

- (i) (a) Ramesh is a good sportsman. (b) He was awarded a prize.
Ramesh, who was awarded a prize, is a good sportsman.
- (ii) (a) Sita is a poor girl. (b) She stole my purse.
Sita, who stole my purse, is a poor girl.
- (iii) (a) My brother is a banker. (b) He wrote a book.
My brother, who is a banker, wrote a book.

(2) Whom :

Look at the following sentences :

- (i) (a) He is the manager. (b) I met him yesterday.
He is the manager whom I met yesterday.
- (ii) (a) This is the girl. (b) The teacher punished her today.
This is the girl whom the teacher punished today.

Conjunction के रूप में 'whom' का अर्थ होता है 'जिसे' और 'जिसको'।



- (1) 'Whom' एक objective form pronoun है, यह Objective के रूप में वाक्य में प्रयुक्त किया जाता है। अतः वाक्य में जो pronoun, objective form में आया है उसके लिए 'whom' का प्रयोग होगा।
- (2) सर्वप्रथम पहला वाक्य लिख दें फिर 'whom' लिखें। 'whom' का प्रयोग उस शब्द के बाद होता है जिसके लिए यह प्रयुक्त हुआ है। जैसे- वाक्य (i) में 'whom' का प्रयोग 'manager' के लिए होता है। अतः 'whom' को manager के बाद लिखना होगा।
- (3) इसके बाद दूसरे वाक्य को Pronoun हटाकर लिख दें।

See more examples :

- (i) (a) I know the girl. (b) He loves her.
I know the girl whom he loves.
- (ii) (a) This is the man. (b) The police arrested him.
This is the man whom the police arrested.
- (iii) (a) The clerk has just left out. (b) You want to meet him.
The clerk has just left out whom you want to meet.

(3) Whose :

Look at the following sentences :

- (i) (a) I know Suresh. (b) His son passed GATE.
I know Suresh whose son passed GATE.
- (ii) (a) This is the girl. (b) Her purse was stolen.
This is the girl whose purse was stolen.

Conjunction के रूप में 'whose' का अर्थ होता है 'जिसका'।



- (1) 'Whose' एक Possessive case pronoun है। इसका प्रयोग वाक्य में आये Possessive case pronoun हेतु किया जाता है।
- (2) सर्वप्रथम पहला वाक्य लिख दें, फिर 'whose' लिखें एवं उसके बाद दूसरे वाक्य के Possessive case pronoun को छोड़कर, शेष वाक्य को लिख दें।
- (3) ध्यान रखें 'whose' का प्रयोग उस शब्द के साथ होगा जिसके लिए वह प्रयुक्त हुआ है। 'whose' के बाद noun अवश्य लगता है।

See more examples :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (i) (a) She is the girl.
She is the girl whose purse was taken by a student. | (b) Her purse was taken by a student. |
| (ii) (a) He is the boy.
He is the boy whose umbrella a student took yesterday. | (b) A student took his umbrella yesterday. |
| (iii) (a) Rani is a good girl.
Rani, whose father will give her a gift, is a good girl. | (b) Her father will give her a gift. |

(4) Which :

Look at the following sentences :

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| (i) (a) I gave you a pen.
I gave you a pen which you have lost. | (b) You have lost it. |
| (ii) (a) He lives at Jaipur.
He lives at Jaipur which is a beautiful city. | (b) Jaipur is a beautiful city. |

'Which' का Conjunction की तरह जब प्रयोग किया जाता है, तो अर्थ होता है: 'जिसे' या 'जो कि'।



- (1) 'Which' का प्रयोग निर्जीव वस्तुओं के लिए किया जाता है।
- (2) यदि दूसरे वाक्य में It, that या वहीं noun वापस में repeat हुआ हो, तो उसके लिए 'which' का प्रयोग किया जायेगा।
- (3) 'Which' का प्रयोग उस शब्द के साथ किया जाता है, जिसके लिए इसका प्रयोग हुआ है। सर्वप्रथम पहला वाक्य लिखें, उसके बाद 'which' लिखें एवं दूसरे वाक्य में आये It, that या repeated noun को छोड़कर शेष वाक्य लिखें।

See more examples :

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| (i) (a) I had a bat.
I had a bat which I gave to my brother. | (b) I gave it to my brother. |
| (ii) (a) This is the house.
This is the house which I purchased last year. | (b) I purchased it last year. |
| (iii) (a) Ritesh purchased a car.
Ritesh purchased a car which is very costly. | (b) It is very costly. |

(5) When :

Look at the following sentences :

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| (i) (a) I was taking bath.
I was taking bath when he came to my house. | (b) He came to my house. |
| (ii) (a) He went to market.
He went to market when she returned from office. | (b) She returned from office. |

'When' का Conjunction के रूप में अर्थ होता है 'जब'।

'When' का प्रयोग तब किया जाता है, जब एक कार्य पूर्ण हो जाता है।



- (1) पहला वाक्य पूरा लिख दें, फिर 'When' लिखकर दूसरा वाक्य लिख दें। यदि किसी noun पुनरावृत्ति (repeat) हुई है तो उसकी जगह he, she, they, it का प्रयोग करें।

See more examples :

- (i) (a) My father gifted me a bike. (b) I passed my B.A.
My father gifted me a bike when I passed my B.A.
(ii) (a) He could swim across this river. (b) He was young.
He could swim across this river when he was young.
(iii) (a) The madam rebuked the students. (b) The students made a noise.
The madam rebuked the students when they made a noise.

(6) Where :

Look at the following sentences :

- (i) (a) This is the house. (b) I lived here for three years.
This is the house where I lived for three years.
(ii) (a) This is the hospital. (b) She was born here.
This is the hospital where she was born.

‘Where’ का Conjunction के रूप में अर्थ होता है ‘जहाँ’।



जब ‘where’ से दो वाक्यों को संयुक्त किया जाना होता है तो एक वाक्य में ‘स्थान’ को व्यक्त करने वाला शब्द (House, Hospital etc.) अवश्य प्रयुक्त होता है। सर्वप्रथम पहला वाक्य लिखें फिर इस स्थान सूचक शब्द के बाद में ‘where’ लिख दें, फिर दूसरे वाक्य को लिख दें। दूसरे वाक्य में प्रयुक्त शब्द here, there आदि को नहीं लिखें, इन्हें छोड़ दें। वास्तव में इनकी जगह ही ‘where’ प्रयुक्त होता है।

See more examples :

- (i) (a) This is the house. (b) My friend lives here.
This is the house where my friend lives.
(ii) (a) She will go to Shimla. (b) Her parents live.
She will go to Shimla where her parents live.
(iii) (a) This is the hotel ‘Taj’. (b) I stayed here last year.
This is the hotel ‘Taj’ where I stayed last year.

Important Points about Specific Conjunctions

- (1) **Neither nor nor nor एवं Either or or or :** कुछ विद्वानों का मत है कि Neither nor nor nor एवं Either or or or का प्रयोग करना इनके मतानुसार उचित नहीं है। इस सन्दर्भ में Mr. Vallins ने लिखा है कि “The correct correlatives are ‘either or’ and ‘neither nor’.” Strictly speaking, we should not add another ‘or’ or ‘nor’ since either and neither imply two and two only. लेकिन अन्य विद्वानों; जैसे: Mr T.S. Eliot, Jefferson, Fowler, H Walker के अनुसार Neither nor, Either or के साथ ‘nor’ एवं ‘or’ add किए जा सकते हैं।

Look at the following sentences :

- (a) *Either from the moralist’s point of view, or from the theologian’s point of view or from the psychologist’s point of view or from that of the political philosopher, or judging by the ordinary standards of likeableness in human beings, Milton is unsatisfactory.* **T.S. Eliot.**
(b) *Neither the brilliancy of Haglitt, nor the harmony of De Quincey, nor the vigour of Macaulay, nor the eloquence of Ruskin, nor the purity of Goldsmith could for a moment be thought capable of expressing the meaning of lamb.* **H. Walker.**

अतः ‘Neither nor nor nor ...’ एवं ‘Either or or or’ का नियम सही एवं मान्य है।

- (2) **No/Not/Never or** : यदि किसी वाक्य में no/not/never आए या उसके बाद कोई Alternative conjunction लगाना हो तो 'or' का प्रयोग होगा, nor का नहीं।

Look at the following sentences :

- (a) I have no chair or stool. (b) I have never read about her or heard of her.
(c) She does not speak or weep. (d) He did not say or write anything.

(3) **The use of 'That' :**

- (A) 'That' का प्रयोग Direct narration में नहीं किया जाता है। हमेशा Indirect narration में इसका प्रयोग होता है।
(a) He said to me, "That I will go there." *Incorrect*
He told me that he would go there. *Correct*
- (B) Indirect narration में 'that' के बाद आने वाले वाक्य का tense, reporting verb यदि past में है तो, Past में ही होगा। वाक्य में आए pronoun भी आवश्यकतानुसार बदले जाते हैं। इस सम्बन्ध में Reported speech के अध्याय में विस्तार से बताया गया है।
- (C) Imperative/Optative/Interrogative/Exclamatory वाक्यों में that का प्रयोग Conjunction के रूप में नहीं किया जाता है। इस सम्बन्ध में भी Reported speech के अध्याय में विस्तृत रूप से बताया गया है।
He said that close the door. *Incorrect*
He said that may grant you success. *Incorrect*
He said that how beautiful the girl was. *Incorrect*
He said that where were you going. *Incorrect*
(इस सम्बन्ध में Reported speech के अध्याय को ध्यानपूर्वक पढ़ें।)
- (D) कुछ verbs के साथ 'that' का प्रयोग करना आवश्यक है। (that का लोप कर देना गलत माना गया है।) ऐसी verbs हैं : Agree, assert, avert, assume, hold, calculate, conceive, learn, maintain, state, reckon, suggest, understand.
(a) I agree your proposal is very good. *Incorrect*
I agree that your proposal is very good. *Correct*
(b) He asserted he could do that. *Incorrect*
He asserted that he could do that. *Correct*
(c) He suggested we should go there. *Incorrect*
He suggested that we should go there. *Correct*
- (E) कुछ verbs जैसे : Believe, hope, suppose, think, presume, afraid of के बाद 'that' को छिपाना, अच्छी अंग्रेजी लिखने हेतु आजकल उचित माना जाने लगा है।
(a) I hope, he is right. (b) We presume you are innocent.
(c) I suppose you have a good dictionary. (d) I think he will come.
- (F) 'That' v/s 'Whether' : Whether का प्रयोग Choice वाले वाक्यों में किया जाता है। 'Whether' के प्रयोग वाले वाक्यों में 'or not' का प्रयोग, Choice को व्यक्त करता है।
(a) I don't know whether she will go there or not.
(b) He doesn't know whether he will pass or not.



इस तरह के वाक्यों में whether की जगह that का प्रयोग नहीं किया जा सकता है।

Omitting 'That'

The word **THAT** is used as a Conjunction to connect a subordinate clause to a preceding verb. In this construction that is sometimes called the 'expletive that'. Indeed, the word is often omitted to good effect, but the very fact of easy omission causes some editors to take out the red pen and strike out the conjunction **THAT** wherever it appears. In the following sentences, we can happily omit the 'that' (or keep it, depending on how the sentence sounds to us) :

- (a) Isabel knew [that] she was about to be fired.
- (b) She definitely felt [that] her fellow employees hadn't supported her.
- (c) I hope [that] she doesn't blame me.

Sometimes omitting the **THAT** creates a break in the flow of a sentence, a break that can be adequately bridged with the use of a comma :

- (i) The problem is, that production in her department has dropped.
- (ii) Remember, that we didn't have these problems before she started working here.

As a general rule, if the sentence feels just as good without the **THAT**, if no ambiguity results from its omission, if the sentence is more efficient or elegant without it, then we can safely omit the that.

Theodore Bernstein lists three conditions in which we should maintain the conjunction THAT :

- (A) When a time element intervenes between the verb and the clause : "The boss said yesterday that production in this department was down fifty percent." (Notice the position of 'yesterday'.)
- (B) When the verb of the clause is long delayed : "Our annual report revealed that some losses sustained by this department in the third quarter of last year were worse than previously thought." (Notice the distance between the subject 'losses' and its verb, 'were'.)
- (C) When a second that can clear up who said or did what : "The CEO said that Isabel's department was slacking off and that production dropped precipitously in the fourth quarter." (Did the CEO say that production dropped or was the drop a result of what he said about Isabel's department? The second that makes the sentence clear.) **'Do's, Don'ts and May bes of English Usage' by Theodore Bernstein.**
- (D) 'Doubt' एवं 'doubtful' के साथ सकारात्मक (affirmative) वाक्यों में whether का प्रयोग किया जाता है, लेकिन Negative एवं Interrogative वाक्यों में doubt या doubtful के साथ 'that' का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

Look at the following sentences :

- (a) I doubt whether she will attend the function or not.
- (b) It is doubtful whether she will agree or not.
- (c) I don't know that she will agree.
- (d) Is there any doubt that she will agree?
- (e) Is it doubtful that she will agree?

कई बार whether के साथ 'as to' का प्रयोग करके वाक्य बनाए जाते हैं जो कि गलत हैं।

- (a) I doubt as to whether she will agree or not.
I doubt whether she will agree or not.
- (b) I can't guess as to whether she has gone or not.
I can't guess whether she has gone or not.

Incorrect
Correct
Incorrect
Correct

- (4) **However/But :** However के साथ कभी भी but का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है या तो वाक्य में but का प्रयोग होगा या however का।

Read the following sentences :

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| (a) But his behaviour, however has not changed. | <i>Incorrect</i> |
| His behaviour however has not changed. | <i>Correct</i> |
| (b) But that, however is not repairable. | <i>Incorrect</i> |
| But that is not repairable. | <i>Correct</i> |

- (5) **Though, although and even though :** Though/although के साथ कभी भी but का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है या तो yet का प्रयोग किया जाता है या नहीं किया जाता है।

Though, although and even though are used to show a contrast between two clauses :

Our new neighbours are quite nice (this is good) though their two dogs bark all day long. (this isn't good)

We can use though or although with no difference in meaning. But, some differences are :

Though is more common than although in conversation or writing.

Though (but not although) can come at the end of a sentence :

My new bike is really fast. I don't like the colour, though.

Though (but not although) can also be used as an adverb :

I'm not good at reasoning but I can help you with your Geography, though, if you want.

The meaning of though is similar to however, but though is much more common than however in conversation.

Even though can be used to make the contrast between two clauses stronger :

My father got back from work really late, even though he had promised to take mum to the cinema.

(a) Although he is poor, yet he is honest.

(b) Though he is poor, he is honest.

- (6) **Until/Unless :** Until का प्रयोग समय के सन्दर्भ में होता है, जबकि Unless का प्रयोग condition (शर्त) के सन्दर्भ में।

Read the following sentences :

- (a) I will stay here until you return.
 (b) He will wait until the train arrives.
 (c) He can't succeed unless he works hard.
 (d) You cannot achieve your goal unless you try for that.



वाक्य (a) एवं (b) में Unless का प्रयोग एवं वाक्य (c) एवं (d) में Until का प्रयोग गलत होगा।

- (7) **When and while :** When का अर्थ होता है 'जब'। While का अर्थ होता है 'जबकि'। When का प्रयोग उस स्थिति में किया जाता है जब एक कार्य पूर्ण हो जाता है।

While का प्रयोग उस स्थिति में किया जाता है जब दो कार्य साथ-साथ हो रहे होते हैं। छात्रों को इस अन्तर को अच्छी तरह समझना चाहिए। प्रायः छात्र When/While का गलत प्रयोग करते हैं।

Look at the following sentences :

- (a) When he came here, she was going to market.
 (b) I saw a monkey, when I woke up.
 (c) He was reading while I was playing.
 (d) She was watching T.V. while I was cooking.

- (8) **As if/As though** : As if एवं As though का अर्थ होता है, suppose अर्थात् 'मान लीजिए/मानो'। इनका प्रयोग करते समय इस बिन्दु का ध्यान रखें कि इनके बाद Past conditional का ही प्रयोग होगा, Present form का नहीं। Would/could/did/ was/were/had gone/knew का प्रयोग हो सकता है, लेकिन will/can/do/does/is/have gone/know का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता।

Look at the following sentences :

- (a) He behaves as if he were a king. (b) She orders as though she were the boss.
(c) They asked us for arranging tea and breakfast as if they were our invitees.

- (9) **Because, as and since** : 'Because', 'As' and 'Since' are used to answer the question : 'Why?'

- (i) They join two clauses in the same sentence :

- (a) I lost my job because I was often late.
(b) Ram resigned because he wanted to spend more time with his family.

- (ii) 'Because', 'As' and 'Since' show the relationship between the two clauses

- (a) Why did you resign from such a well-paid job, Ram ?

- (b) Because I wanted to spend more time with my family.

'Because' is more common than 'As' and 'Since' when the 'reason' is the most important thing. The because-clause usually placed after the main clause :

I went to **Chennai** for a holiday last October because I knew it would be warm and sunny every day I was there.

'As' and 'Since' are used when the reason is already well-known and/or less important. The 'As' or 'Since' clause often comes at the beginning of the sentence and is separated from the main clause by a comma :

- (a) As my family had finished dinner when I got home, I went to this really good beer bar. (I'm telling you about the beer bar. It's not so important 'why' I went there.)
(b) Since it's your birthday, I'll make you breakfast in bed. (I'm going to make you breakfast) (I know, and you know, it's your birthday.)
Since I have no money, I can't go to the movie.



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01

Join the following pairs of sentences using the connectors given in brackets :

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| (1) My father is ill. My wife is ill. | (both..... and) |
| (2) The teacher was not in the class. The monitor was not in the class. | (neither nor) |
| (3) He is poor. He is honest. | (though yet) |
| (4) The book may be in the bag. It may be in the cupboard. | (either or) |
| (5) There was a violent storm. Many trees were uprooted. | (such that) |
| (6) The doctor reached. The patient died. | (hardly when) |
| (7) He is strong. He is brave. | (not only but also) |
| (8) Do not be a borrower. Do not be a lender. | (neither nor) |
| (9) It was very dark. We could see nothing. | (so that) |
| (10) The thief saw the policeman. He ran away at once. | (no sooner than) |

02

Combine each pair of sentences below into one sentence choosing the right conjunction from the following list since, besides, lest, never, the, less, before, after, otherwise :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| (1) Walk carefully. You may fall. | (2) It's raining. We won't play the match today. |
| (3) Don't write. The bell has gone. | (4) He was busy. He attended to me. |
| (5) He is a rich man. He is an M.P. | |

03

Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct connectors given in brackets :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) A student will fail he does not work hard. | (because, if, until, though, unless) |
| (2) He was late it was raining heavily. | (while, after, so, that, when, because) |
| (3) you have any doubt, please ask me. | (In case, Because, Unless, Until, Though) |
| (4) She is more intelligent her sister. | (as, than, before, because, that) |
| (5) She has changed a lot I saw her last. | (when, before, while, as, since) |
| (6) She could not get the prize, she tried hard for it. | (yet, though, but, when, and) |
| (7) We must leave now it is getting dark. | (as long as, as soon as, when, since) |
| (8) I was taking a bath somebody rang the bell. | (as, while, when, as soon as, than) |
| (9) He failed in the examination;, he didn't lose heart. | (moreover, then, while, nevertheless, until) |
| (10) She tried her best;, she couldn't succeed. | (besides, in case, however, instead, as long as) |

04

Fill in the blanks with suitable connectors chosen from the ones given in brackets :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) We want to respect others feelings....., we should respect the feelings of others. | (nevertheless, similarly, on the other hand) |
| (2) We lost the key. We had to break the lock open. | (still, for, therefore) |
| (3) His parents were transferred to Agra he was five years old. | (when, since, while) |
| (4) A mechanic was sent for our car broke down. | (since, as soon as, because) |
| (5) The rent being very high he will not take that house; it is very far away from his office. | (because, moreover, still) |
| (6) The police asked the suspect question after question, he did not open his mouth. | (yet, still, however) |
| (7) I have been to the hanging garden four times, I won't mind going there again. | (but, nevertheless, however) |
| (8) much I tried, I could not help him. | (Though, However, As) |
| (9) My uncle left for Mexico I was six years old. | (when, since, while) |
| (10) She was late it was raining continuously. | (after, because, while) |

05

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| (1) I could neither contact Lila nor Sarla. | (2) Neither he plays nor reads. |
| (3) She both accused me and my friend Shyam. | |
| (4) Ram not only built a temple but also a mosque. | |
| (5) He has visited both to New York and Mexico. | |
| (6) English is not only difficult to speak but also to write. | |
| (7) She is as much noted for her beauty as for her wisdom. | |
| (8) I have both visited America and Russia. | |
| (9) He neither knows me nor my wife. | |
| (10) Ramesh neither went to Jaipur nor Delhi. | |

06

Correct the following sentences :

- (1) No sooner had he reached the station when the train arrived.
- (2) Though he is poor but he is trustworthy.
- (3) Hardly had she left the hospital, than it began to rain.
- (4) He had neither a car or a scooter.
- (5) There was much disturbance both in Jammu as well as in Pahalgam.
- (6) One cannot be both present at New Delhi as well as at Jaipur.
- (7) He cannot either read nor write English.
- (8) She cannot run nor walk.
- (9) He has not any book nor any copy.
- (10) I have never seen her nor heard of her.

07

Correct the following sentences :

- (1) I do not know that when she will go.
- (2) I cannot say that where he is working now-a-days.
- (3) I understand she will attend the function.
- (4) I hope that you are well now.
- (5) I can assert it is right.
- (6) I cannot explain that why I like her so much.
- (7) I asked my assistant that bring a chair and my mobile.
- (8) I agree it is a good opportunity to invest the money.
- (9) As she started late, she will miss the train.
- (10) Since Ram is a poor fellow, he couldn't buy a new dress.
- (11) The reason is because he is not well.

08

Correct the following sentences :

- (1) It was generally doubted that India would permit the use of her soil.
- (2) It is not doubtful whether she will attend the party.
- (3) Is there any doubt whether she will come ?
- (4) Keep your body fit like I do.
- (5) You are as dear to me as her.
- (6) Until he works hard, he can't pass.
- (7) Take an umbrella in case it may rain.
- (8) You wait here unless the train arrives.
- (9) You will succeed, if you will work hard.
- (10) If I had wings, I will fly to London.
- (11) If I won a lottery, I will buy a big house
- (12) If he had worked hard, he would pass.

09

Correct the following sentences :

- (1) It is a year since I have met her.
- (2) It is a month since she has left for U.S.A.
- (3) He speaks as if he was the master.
- (4) Ram orders as though he would be a millionaire.
- (5) Five years have passed since I had seen her.
- (6) A year passed since his wife died.
- (7) I was playing when he was watching T.V.
- (8) I will go when he will come.
- (9) I went there while he awoke.
- (10) I will meet you before I shall leave for home.

Spotting Errors (Conjunctions)

10

Read each sentence to find out whether there is an error in any part :

- (1) She was not (a)/ so well versed in English (b)/ that they (c)/ had expected. (d)
- (2) He not only comes (a)/ here for having lunch (b)/ but also for having a glimpse of (c)/ the beautiful sales girls. (d)
- (3) I cannot permit you (a)/ to leave the class (b)/ unless the teacher comes (c)/ and instructs me in the matter. (d)
- (4) The patient would not (a)/ have died (b)/ when the doctor had (c)/ come in time. (d)
- (5) Three years have passed (a)/ that I returned from (b)/ USA and settled here. (c)
- (6) The captain asked (a)/ the players to go (b)/ to market and buy some fruits (c)/ as apples, oranges, bananas etc. (d)
- (7) Both the rich (a)/ along with the poor (b)/ are responsible for a great many vices (c)/ with which our country is inflicted. (d)
- (8) Since the festival of Diwali is approaching (a)/ so my son has bought (b)/ many fireworks (c)/ as rockets, crackers etc. (d)
- (9) The thief had (a)/ hardly put the cash (b)/ in his pocket (c)/ than the owner woke up. (d)
- (10) No sooner did we (a)/ find out a solution (b)/ to the problem (c)/ when another problem cropped up. (d)

11.

Read each sentence to find out whether there is an error in any part :

- (1) She has lots of money (a)/ and she dare not (b)/ purchase a new car. (c)
- (2) She is not only (a)/ sympathetic to the rich patients (b)/ but also to the poor ones. (c)
- (3) Because she is intelligent (a)/ therefore she secures highest marks (b)/ in her class. (c)
- (4) It was almost five months ago (a)/ since she wrote a letter (b)/ to me (c)/ to remind me of my promise. (d)
- (5) The inspector was doubtful (a)/ that the man who had been run over (b)/ by the truck had (c)/ lain there for more than a day. (d)
- (6) He instructed me (a)/ that I should do (b)/ all the work as quickly (c)/ like him. (d)
- (7) Seldom or (a)/ ever have I sent (b)/ a beggar away without (c)/ giving him something. (d)
- (8) Seldom or ever (a)/ have I tried my (b)/ best to help my friends (c)/ who are in need. (d)
- (9) The teacher advised (a)/ the students to (b)/ go through the notes as many times as possible (c)/ lest they would fail. (d)
- (10) He asked me (a)/ that why I was not appearing (b)/in the examination. (c)
- (11) Most of the founding fathers (a)/ of our constitution are (b)/ so reverend as Ambedkar (c)/ if not more. (d)
- (12) I don't know (a)/ if any of the members (b)/ of the society is conspiring (c)/ against the chairman or not. (d)
- (13) This is the same dog (a)/ which bit her (b)/ while she was going (c)/ to the hospital. (d)
- (14) This is not (a)/ such a big problem (b)/ which cannot be solved (c)/ with some efforts. (d)
- (15) As he is (a)/ a perfectionist (b)/ so he always insists (c)/ on regular practice. (d)

**SOLUTIONS****TEST YOURSELF Exercises****Solution TYE 01**

- (1) Both my father and my wife are ill. (2) Neither the teacher nor the monitor was in the class.
- (3) Though he is poor, yet he is honest. (4) The book may be either in the bag or in the cupboard.
- (5) There was such a violent storm that many trees were uprooted.
- (6) The doctor had hardly reached when the patient died.
- (7) He is not only strong but also brave. (8) Neither be a borrower nor be a lender.
- (9) It was so dark that we could see nothing.
- (10) No sooner did the policeman see the thief than he ran away.

Solution TYE 02

- (1) Walk carefully lest you should fall. (2) Since it's raining, we won't play the match today.
- (3) Don't write after the bell has gone. (4) He was busy, nevertheless, he attended to me.
- (5) He is a rich man, besides, he is an M.P.

Solution TYE 03

- (1) if, (2) because, (3) In case, (4) than, (5) since,
- (6) though, (7) since, (8) when, (9) nevertheless, (10) however.

Solution TYE 04

- (1) similarly, (2) therefore, (3) when, (4) because, (5) moreover,
- (6) still, (7) but, (8) However, (9) when, (10) because.

Solution TYE 05

- (1) I could contact neither Lila nor Sarla. (2) He neither plays nor reads.
- (3) She accused both me and my friend Shyam. (4) Ram built not only a temple but also a mosque.
- (5) He has visited both to New York and to Mexico.

Or

- He has visited to both New York and Mexico.
- (6) English is difficult not only to speak but also to write.
- (7) She is noted as much for her beauty as for her wisdom.
- (8) I have visited both America and Russia. (9) He knows neither me nor my wife.
- (10) Ramesh went neither to Jaipur nor to Delhi.

Solution TYE 06

- (1) No sooner had he reached the station than the train arrived.
- (2) Though he is poor yet he is trustworthy.
- (3) Hardly had she left the hospital, when it began to rain.
- (4) He had neither a car nor a scooter.
- (5) There was much disturbance both in Jammu and in Pahalgam.
- (6) One cannot be present both at New Delhi and at Jaipur.
- (7) He cannot either read or write English.
- (8) She cannot run or walk.
- (9) He has not any book or copy.
- (10) I have never seen her or heard of her.

Solution TYE 07

- (1) I do not know when she will go.
- (2) I cannot say where he is working now-a-days.
- (3) I understand that she will attend the function.
- (4) I hope you are well now.
- (5) I can assert that it is right.
- (6) I cannot explain why I like her so much.
- (7) I asked my assistant to bring a chair and my mobile.
- (8) I agree that it is a good opportunity to invest the money.
- (9) As she started late, she missed the train.
- (10) Since Ram is a poor fellow he can't buy a new dress.
- (11) The reason is that he is not well.

Solution TYE 08

- (1) It was generally doubted whether India would permit the use of her soil.
- (2) It is not doubtful that she will attend the party.
- (3) Is there any doubt that she will come ?
- (4) Keep your body fit like me .
- (5) You are as dear to me as she.
- (6) Unless he works hard, he can't pass.
- (7) Take an umbrella in case it rains.
- (8) You wait here until the train arrives.
- (9) You will succeed, if you work hard.
- (10) If I had wings, I would fly to London.
- (11) If I won a lottery, I would buy a big house.
- (12) If he had worked hard, he would have passed.

Solution TYE 09

- (1) It is a year since I met her.
- (2) It is a month since she left for U.S.A.
- (3) He speaks as if he were the master.
- (4) Ram orders as though he were a millionaire.
- (5) Five years have passed since I saw her.
- (6) A year has passed since his wife died.
- (7) I was playing while he was watching TV.
- (8) I will go when he comes.
- (9) I went there when he awoke.
- (10) I will meet you before I leave for home.

Solution TYE 10

- (1) (c) that की जगह as का प्रयोग होगा, क्योंकि यहाँ वाक्य का structure, so as का है।
- (2) (a) not only का प्रयोग here not only for having lunch के साथ होगा।
Not only but also से दो subjects/objects/ verbs/gerunds को जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे:
 - (a) Not only Hari but also Krishna is playing. (Subject)
 - (b) I have invited not only Hari but also Krishna. (Object)
 - (c) He not only reads but also plays. (Verbs)
 - (d) She likes not only swimming but also singing. (Gerunds)
- (3) (c) Unless की जगह until का प्रयोग होगा। समय के सन्दर्भ में until का तथा condition के सन्दर्भ में unless का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- (4) (c) when की जगह if का प्रयोग करें। Conditional sentence का structure निम्नवत होता है
If he had come to me, I would have helped him.
- (5) (b) that की जगह since का प्रयोग होगा। In perfect tense 'since' is used for point of time and 'for' is used for period of time.
- (6) (d) as की जगह like का प्रयोग होगा।
as का प्रयोग nominative के साथ होता है, जबकि like का प्रयोग objective के साथ होता है। जैसे :
 - (a) He supports a man like me.
 - (b) He supports a man as I (support).

- (7) (b) along with the की जगह 'and' का प्रयोग होगा। Both के साथ and conjunction आता है।
 (8) (d) as की जगह like का प्रयोग होगा। as का प्रयोग Nominative case के साथ होता है और like का प्रयोग Objective case के साथ।
 (9) (d) than की जगह when का प्रयोग होगा। hardly के साथ conjunction when आता है।
 (10) (d) when की जगह than का प्रयोग होगा।
 No sooner के साथ than तथा Hardly, scarcely के साथ when का प्रयोग होता है।

Solution TYE 11

- (1) (b) and की जगह but का प्रयोग होगा। वाक्य में contrast है।
 (2) (a) not only का प्रयोग to the rich से पहले होगा। वाक्य में but also का प्रयोग to the poor के पहले हुआ है अतः वाक्य में balance बनाने हेतु not only का प्रयोग to the rich के पहले करना होगा।
 (3) (b) therefore का प्रयोग अनुचित है। because, as, since, for आदि conjunctions के साथ so/therefore आदि का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।
 (4) (b) since की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा। साधारणतया since, for का प्रयोग Perfect tense में किया जाता है। वैसे भी ago के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है। The sentence is of Past indefinite.
 (5) (b) that की जगह whether का प्रयोग होगा।
 (6) (d) like him की जगह as he होगा।
 यहाँ comparison दो nominative, I एवं he में हैं। अतः as he लिखना होगा।
 (7) (b) ever की जगह never का प्रयोग होगा। वाक्य का अर्थ कभी नहीं या अधिकांशतया नहीं है।
 (8) (a) or की जगह if का प्रयोग होगा। seldom के साथ या तो seldom if ever या seldom or never आता है। वाक्य के सन्दर्भ के अनुसार इनका प्रयोग किया जाता है।
 (9) (d) would की जगह should का प्रयोग होगा। lest के साथ हमेशा should का प्रयोग होगा।
 (10) (b) that को हटा दें। Indirect narration में 'wh' questions में कोई conjunction नहीं लगता है।
 (11) (c) so की जगह as का प्रयोग होगा। so as का प्रयोग negative वाक्यों में होता है। जबकि as as का प्रयोग affirmative वाक्यों में जैसे :
 (a) Rahim is not so intelligent as Shyam.
 (b) Rahim is as intelligent as Shyam.
 (12) (b) if की जगह whether का प्रयोग होगा। वाक्य की संरचना whether or पर आधारित है।
 (13) (b) which की जगह that का प्रयोग होगा। verb स्पष्ट होती है तो same के साथ that का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :
 This is the same chair that was missing.
 जब verb स्पष्ट नहीं होती तो same as का प्रयोग सामान्यतः किया जाता है। जैसे :
 This is the same chair as mine.
 (14) (c) which की जगह as का प्रयोग होगा। ध्यान रखें : Such is followed by as or that.
See the following examples :
 (a) Such + noun + as
 He is not such a person as I thought .
 (b) Such + that
 His behaviour was such that I felt hurt.
 (c) Such + as + infinitive
 Her ailment is not such as to cause worries.
 (15) (c) so का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
 As, because, for के साथ so, therefore का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

The Interjections (!)

Definition : The interjection is always a spoken word that expresses an emotion.

Or

An interjection is a word, used to express some sudden feeling of mind.

अर्थात् Interjection एक ऐसा शब्द है जो हृदय में उठने वाली आकस्मिक भावना, उद्गार को प्रकट करता है। Interjection के अन्त में Sign of exclamation चिन्ह (!) लगाया जाता है।

The word 'interjection' literally means 'something thrown in between' from the Latin inter ('between') and jacer ('throw').

An Interjection, sometimes called a filled pause, is a part of speech that usually has no grammatical connection to the rest of the sentence and simply expresses emotion on the part of the speaker, although most interjections have clear definitions.

Interjection का सम्बन्ध वाक्य की संरचना की grammar इत्यादि से नहीं होता है।

Interjections can be phrases or even sentences as well as words :

As I entered the room—Oh, my God! What I saw! — he was still standing there.

Read the following sentences:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (i) Hurrah ! Our team has won. | (ii) Alas ! He lost his son. |
| (iii) Bravo ! Well played my boys. | (iv) Ah ! She has gone. |
| (v) Fie ! She did such thing. | (vi) Oh ! You are here. |
| (vii) What ! She failed? | (viii) Shh ! Don't make a noise. |
| (ix) Hush ! Don't talk here. | (x) Hello ! How do you do ? |

उपरोक्त सभी वाक्यों में जिस शब्द के साथ चिन्ह (!) लगा है वह शब्द Interjection ही है। उस चिन्ह (!) को Mark of Exclamation कहा जाता है। 'Hello' and 'Goodbye' are also interjections, as are exclamations like Cheers! and Hurray! In fact, very often they are characterized by exclamation marks depending on the stress of the attitude or the force of the emotion they are expressing. 'Well' can also be used as an interjection, for example when put at the beginning of a sentence.

हृदय की आकस्मिक भावनाओं को निम्न Interjections से व्यक्त किया जा सकता है :

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Joy (खुशी)—Hurrah, Ha ! Ha ! | (2) Sorrow (दुःख)—Alas !, Ah !, Ha ! |
| (3) Surprise (आश्चर्य)—Oh !, What ! | (4) Contempt (घृणा)—Fie !, Bosh!, Shame ! Shame ! |
| (5) Greetings (बधाई)—Bravo !, Well done ! | (6) Calling (सम्बोधन)—Hello !, Hey ! |
| (7) Attention (ध्यान)—Listen !, Lo !, Hush !, Shh !, Behold ! | |

उक्त Interjections का प्रयोग भावनाओं के अनुसार किया जाता है।

Interjections are uninflected function words that express the attitude or emotion of the speaker. They are used when the speaker encounters events that cause these emotions — unexpectedly, painfully, surprisingly or in many other sudden ways.

TRANSFORMATION OF SENTENCES

Transformation से आशय है एक Grammatical form से वाक्यों को दूसरी Grammatical form में इस प्रकार बदलना कि उनके अर्थ में कोई परिवर्तन न हो।

‘Change’ एवं ‘Transformation’ : Change में वाक्य का अर्थ परिवर्तित हो जाता है, जबकि Transformation में अर्थ समान रहता है।

Ways of Transformation

I. Interchanging degree of Adjective :

एक वाक्य में Positive/Comparative के Adjective को Superlative degree में बदलने पर भी वाक्य के अर्थ में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं आए, इसे निम्न प्रकार से किया जा सकता है :

Degrees : Adjective की निम्नलिखित तीन श्रेणियाँ (Degrees) होती हैं :

- (1) Positive degree : यह अपने मूल रूप में रहती है, साधारण कथन में प्रयुक्त होती है।
- (2) Comparative degree : यह तुलना हेतु प्रयुक्त होती है। Comparative degree के पश्चात् साधारणतया ‘than’ का प्रयोग किया जाता है। कुछ Comparative degree; जैसे : Junior, senior; इत्यादि; के साथ to का प्रयोग होता है।
- (3) Superlative degree : यह व्यक्ति/वस्तु की सर्वोच्चता व्यक्त करने हेतु प्रयोग की जाती है। जब किसी वस्तु या व्यक्ति को अन्य की तुलना में सर्वश्रेष्ठ बताना होता है, तो Superlative degree का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(A) Conversion of Positive into Comparative

वाक्य में Positive degree leerve प्रकार से प्रयोग की जा सकती है।

Type I : As as, Type II : So as, Type III : No other as as :

Type I – As as :

Read the following sentences :

- (a) Hira is as tall as Ram.
- (b) Shalu is as intelligent as Ram.

Ram is not taller than Hira.

Ram is not more intelligent than Shalu.



- (1) As..... as का अर्थ 'समानता' से होता है। Hira is as tall as Ram, इसका अर्थ हुआ कि हीरा, राम के समान लम्बा है। इसको जब Comparative degree में लिखेंगे तो हमें लिखना होगा, राम, हीरा से ज्यादा लम्बा नहीं है अर्थात् Ram is not taller than Hira. (अर्थात् अब वाक्य Negative बनेगा।)
- (2) सबसे पहले दोनों subjects की जगह को बदल दें अर्थात् पहले वाले subject को अन्त में रखें एवं दूसरे वाले subject को वाक्य के प्रारम्भ में लिखें।
- (3) अब वाक्य में आए helping verb + not + comparative degree + than को लिख दें। इसके बाद subject हम पहले ही लिख चुके हैं।
- See more examples :
- | | |
|---|---|
| (i) She is as beautiful as her sister. | Her sister is not more beautiful than she. |
| (ii) Ramesh is as wise as his father. | His father is not wiser than Ramesh. |
| (iii) Savita is as religious as her mother. | Her mother is not more religious than Savita. |

Type II So as : So as वाले वाक्य में negative (not) जुड़ा रहता है, अतः transformation के बाद Affirmative वाक्य बनाता है। Look at the following sentences :

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (a) Ram is not so strong as Shyam. | Shyam is stronger than Ram. |
| (b) Sita is not so beautiful as Rani. | Rani is more beautiful than Sita. |



- (1) Not so..... as का प्रयोग 'उतना नहीं' के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है।
Ram is not so strong as Shyam इसका अर्थ है कि राम, श्याम जितना बलवान नहीं है। इसको Comparative में बदलने के लिए हमें लिखना होगा: श्याम, राम से ज्यादा बलवान है। अर्थात् Shyam is stronger than Ram.
- (2) दोनों subjects का परस्पर स्थान बदल दें। उसके बाद helping verb + comparative degree + than लिख दें। इसके बाद subject आएगा जिसके बारे में हम पहले ही बता चुके हैं।
- See more examples :
- | | |
|---|---|
| (i) She is not so intelligent as her brother. | Her brother is more intelligent than she. |
| (ii) Raju is not so wise as Rahim. | Rahim is wiser than Raju. |
| (iii) Shanu is not so cruel as his friend Chhota. | His friend Chhota is more cruel than Shanu. |

Type III—No other as as :

Look at the following sentences :

- (a) No other city in Rajasthan is as beautiful as Jaipur.
Jaipur is more beautiful than any other city in Rajasthan.
- (b) No other student in college is as strong as Rahim.
Rahim is stronger than any other student in college.



- (1) No other..... as.....as का प्रयोग 'अन्य कोई उतना नहीं' के अर्थ में किया जाता है।
No other city in Rajasthan is as beautiful as Jaipur.
इसका अर्थ हुआ कि राजस्थान में अन्य कोई शहर उतना सुन्दर नहीं है जितना कि जयपुर है। जब इसे Comparative में बदलेंगे तो हमें लिखना होगा—जयपुर राजस्थान में अन्य शहरों से अधिक सुन्दर है। अर्थात् Jaipur is more beautiful than any other city in Rajasthan.
- (2) वाक्य के अन्त में आए subject से वाक्य प्रारम्भ करें। उसके बाद helping verb + comparative degree + than + any other लिखें।
- (3) उसके बाद No other के बाद वाला वाक्यांश लिख देखें।
- See more examples :
- | | |
|---|--|
| (i) No other book in the market is as good as this. | This is better than any other book in the market. |
| (ii) No other girl in the college is as beautiful as Sita. | Sita is more beautiful than any other girl in the college. |
| (iii) No other teacher in the school is as dedicated as Mr. Sharma. | Mr. Sharma is more dedicated than any other teacher in the school. |

(B) Interchange of Positive, Comparative and Superlative :

Positive degree वाले वाक्य को Comparative degree में बदलना हम सीख चुके हैं। अब हम देखेंगे Positive degree के वाक्यों को Superlative degree का प्रयोग करके एवं Superlative degree के वाक्यों को Positive एवं Comparative degree के वाक्यों में किस तरह Transform किया जाए।



Superlative degree के वाक्य मोहन हमारे कॉलेज का सर्वश्रेष्ठ छात्र है अर्थात्

Mohan is the best student in our college.

इसे हम निम्न प्रकार से भी लिख सकते हैं :

मोहन हमारे कॉलेज के अन्य सभी छात्रों से अच्छा है।

Mohan is better than any other student in our college. अर्थात्

Comparative degree (better) में हम इसे इस प्रकार से भी लिख सकते हैं :

हमारे कॉलेज का अन्य कोई छात्र, मोहन जितना अच्छा नहीं है अर्थात्

No other student of our college is as good as Mohan. यह positive degree का वाक्य है।

उपर्युक्त वाक्यों का आशय समान है।

See more examples:

(i) *This is the most beautiful building in our town.*

Superlative

This is the more beautiful than any other building in our town.

Comparative

No other building in our town is so beautiful as this.

Positive

(ii) *Ramesh is the strongest man in the village.*

Superlative

Ramesh is stronger than any other man in the village.

Comparative

No other man in the village is so strong as Ramesh.

Positive

(iii) *Kolkata is the largest city in India.*

Superlative

Kolkata is larger than any other city in India.

Comparative

No other city in India is as large as Kolkata.

Positive

Superlative को Comparative में बदलने के लिए *than any other* का प्रयोग किया जाता है एवं Positive में बदलने के लिए *No other + noun +as,as, or No other + noun +so.....as* का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

कुछ वाक्यों का Structure निम्न प्रकार का होता है। इनमें One of the + Superlative का प्रयोग किया जाता है। इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को Comparative में बदलने हेतु 'most other' का प्रयोग किया जाता है तथा Positive में बदलने हेतु Very few other का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार से किया जाता है :

(a) *Kalidas was one of the greatest poets.*

Superlative

Kalidas was greater than most other poets.

Comparative

Very few other poets were as great as Kalidas.

Positive

(b) *Mumbai is one of the most beautiful cities in India.*

Superlative

Mumbai is more beautiful than most other cities in India.

Comparative

Very few other cities in India are as beautiful as Mumbai.

Positive

Removal of 'Too'

'Too' का प्रयोग वाक्यों में निम्न छह प्रकार से किया जाता है

(1) *He is too weak to run.* वह इतना अधिक कमजोर है कि दौड़ नहीं सकता है।

(2) *The weather is too cold to go out at this time.*
मौसम इतना अधिक ठण्डा है कि इस समय बाहर नहीं जाया जा सकता है।

(3) *He is too lazy for a sportsman.* वह इतना अधिक आलसी है कि एक खिलाड़ी नहीं हो सकता है।

(4) *The milk is too hot.* दूध आवश्यकता से अधिक गर्म है।

- (5) He is too strong for me.

वह इतना अधिक ताकतवर है कि मैं उसकी बराबरी नहीं कर सकता हूँ। (मैं उसके मुकाबले में कुछ नहीं हूँ।)

- (6) He is too kind hearted not to forgive me.

वह इतना अधिक दयालु है कि मुझे माफ कर सकता है।

‘Too’ का अर्थ, excess ‘उचित से अधिक’ होता है। ‘Too’ के साथ जब ‘to’ का प्रयोग किया जाता है, तो यह एक negativity व्यक्त करता है। ऐसे वाक्यों से ‘Too’ को हटाकर अग्र प्रकार Transform किया जा सकता है :

See the following examples :

Type I :

(a) He is	too	weak	to run.
He is	so	weak	that he cannot run.
(b) She is	too	old	to climb up the tree.
She is	so	old	that she cannot climb up the tree.
(c) He was	too	tired	to do anything.
He was	so	tired	that he could not do anything.



(1) ‘Too’ की जगह ‘so’ का प्रयोग करें एवं to + की जगह that + subject + cannot + का प्रयोग करें।

(2) यदि वाक्य Past tense में है तो cannot की जगह couldnot का प्रयोग होगा।

See more examples:

(1) He is too weak to play cricket.

He is so weak that he cannot play cricket.

(2) Ram was too old to lift that weight.

Ram was so old that he couldn't lift that weight.

Type II :

Read the following examples

(a) The mountain is	too	high	to climb it up.
The mountain is	so	high	that one cannot climb it up.
(b) The wall is	too	hot	to touch.
The wall is	so	hot	that one cannot touch it.
(c) The scene was	too	pathetic	to see.
The scene was	so	pathetic	that one couldn't see that.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में subject स्पष्ट नहीं होता है, अतः one को subject बनाकर उसका प्रयोग किया जाता है।

See more examples :

(d) This item is too costly to purchase.

This item is so costly that one cannot purchase it.

(e) The road is too slippery to walk.

The road is so slippery that one cannot walk on it.

Type III :

Read the following examples :

(a) He is	too	slow	for a racer.
He is	so	slow	that he cannot be a racer.
(b) He is	too	weak	for a wrestler.
He is	so	weak	that he cannot be a wrestler.
(c) She was	too	dull	for a wrangler.
She was	so	dull	that she could not be a wrangler.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में for a..... के लिए that + subject + cannot + be + का प्रयोग किया जाता है। यदि वाक्य Past tense में हो तो cannot की जगह could not का प्रयोग किया जाएगा।

Type IV :*Read the following examples :*

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| (a) The tea is too cold.
The tea is colder than it is proper. | The tea is colder than it should be. |
| (b) He is too clever.
He is cleverer than it is proper. | He is cleverer than he should be. |
| (c) He is too lazy.
He is lazier than it is proper. | He is lazier than he should be. |

इस तरह के वाक्य जिनमें केवल 'too' का ही प्रयोग होता है, इनमें 'too' का अर्थ 'उचित से अधिक' या 'जितना होना चाहिए, उससे अधिक' होता है। इसमें Adjective की Comparative degree लगाकर than he should be or that it is proper का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Type V :*Read the following examples :*

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) He is too intelligent for me. | He is so intelligent that I am no match for him. |
| (b) He is too old for the task. | He is so old that he is not fit for the task. |
| (c) The work is too large for me. | The work is so large that I cannot handle it. |
| (d) His position is too bad for solution. | His position is so bad that it has no solution. |
| (e) My heart is too full for words.
My heart is so full that I cannot express it in words. | |

इस तरह के वाक्यों में too की जगह so का प्रयोग किया जाता है एवं for की जगह वाक्य के सारांश के अनुसार that it or that I cannot का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Type VI :*Read the following examples :*

- | | |
|--|--|
| (a) He was too intelligent, not to find solution. | He was so intelligent that he could find solution. |
| (b) He is too clever not to understand it. | He is so clever that he can understand it. |
| (c) The hotel is too large not to accommodate all of you.
The hotel is so large that it can accommodate all of you. | |
| (d) She is too generous not to help the poor.
She is so generous that she can help the poor. | |
| (e) His personality is too powerful not to impress every body.
His personality is so powerful that it impresses every body or that it can impress every body. | |

इस तरह के वाक्यों में 'not to' का प्रयोग होता है तथा transformation के बाद cannot की जगह can या Simple future का प्रयोग किया जाता है। यदि वाक्य Past में हो तो could not का प्रयोग किया जाएगा।

II. Interchange of Affirmative and Negative Sentences :

Affirmative वाक्य, एक सकारात्मक statement की तरह होते हैं, जिनमें किसी negative शब्द; जैसे : not, hardly, without, neither, none, no इत्यादि का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Affirmative sentence को Negative sentence में transform करते समय यह ध्यान रखना है कि negative वाक्य में प्रयुक्त negative शब्द हटाया जाए तथा वाक्य का सारांश/अर्थ समान रहे।

इस तरह का transformation निम्न प्रकार से किया जाता है :

- (1) **Using Antonyms :** वाक्य में आए शब्दों के Antonyms (विपरीतार्थक शब्द) का प्रयोग करके निम्न प्रकार से Affirmative sentence को Negative sentence में तथा Negative sentence को Affirmative sentence में बदला जा सकता है :

Affirmative

- (a) He is a rich man.
- (b) I am innocent.
- (c) The boss is always right.
- (d) Man is mortal.
- (e) This knife is sharp.
- (f) Ram dislikes you.

Negative

- (a) He is not an honest person.
- (b) You do not trust him.
- (c) He is not a wise fellow.
- (d) His habits are not good.
- (e) She is not a dull girl.
- (f) You should not deny it.

Negative

- He is not a poor man.
- I am not guilty.
- The boss is never wrong.
- Man is not immortal.
- This knife is not blunt.
- Ram does not like you.

Affirmative

- He is a dishonest person.
- You distrust him.
- He is a foolish fellow.
- His habits are bad.
- She is an intelligent girl.
- You should accept it.

- (2) **Using double negatives** : वाक्यों में Negative अर्थ रखने वाले दो शब्दों का प्रयोग करके भी Affirmative को Negative एवं Negative को Affirmative में Transform किया जाता है। जैसे :

Affirmative

- (a) I love her.
- (b) I have a car.
- (c) Every rose has thorns.
- (d) She is wise.

Negative

- (a) There is no smoke without fire.
- (b) I am not without money.
- (c) He left no plan untried.
- (d) No gains without pains.

Negative

- I am not without love for her.
- I am not without a car.
- There is no rose without thorns.
- She is not without wisdom.

Affirmative

- Where there is fire there is smoke.
- I have money.
- He tried every plan.
- For gains one has to take pains.

- (3) 'To fail' का प्रयोग करने या हटाने से भी transformation किया जाता है। जैसे :

Affirmative

- (a) He played the match.
- (b) He delivered his speech.
- (c) I saw the Taj Mahal.
- (d) Consult the doctor.

Negative

- (a) He couldn't catch the train.
- (b) She didn't fail to help the needy.
- (c) He couldn't see me.
- (d) He couldn't meet the chairman.

Negative

- He did not fail to play the match.
- He didn't fail to deliver his speech.
- I did not fail to see the Taj Mahal.
- Do not fail to consult the doctor.

Affirmative

- He failed to catch the train.
- She helped the needy.
- He failed to see me.
- He failed to meet the chairman.

- (4) जब Affirmative वाक्यों में only/alone, as soon as, when/whenever का प्रयोग हो तो इनको negative वाक्यों में transform करने के लिए none but, no sooner than, never but का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

Affirmative

- Only/alone
- As soon as
- When/whenever

Negative

- None but
- No sooner than
- Never but

Look at the following examples :

Affirmative

- (a) Only the poor can beg like this.
- (b) Only a fool can say like this.
- (c) The brave alone deserves the award.
- (d) Only Ram was present there.
- (e) As soon as I reached there, it started raining.
- (f) As soon as he saw the police, he ran away.
- (g) It always pours when it rains.

Negative

- (a) None but a girl can talk like this.
- (b) None but Nisha can solve it.
- (c) No sooner did the thief see the police.
- (d) No sooner did I hear the noise, than I came out.
- (e) It never rains but pours.
- (f) There is nobody who dislikes mangoes.

Miscellaneous sentences :

Affirmative

- (a) It is a unique item.
- (b) All the people wept.
- (c) She seldom comes here.
- (d) He goes to office daily.
- (e) We won all the matches.
- (f) His position became worse gradually.
- (g) Smoking is prohibited here.
- (h) Have patience please.
- (i) Keep silence.
- (j) A few persons were present there.
- (k) Work hard lest you should fail.
- (l) Run fast lest you should miss the train.

Negative

- None but the poor can beg like this.
- None but a fool can say like this.
- None but the brave deserves the award.
- None but Ram was present there.
- No sooner did I reach there than it started raining.
- No sooner did he see the police than he ran away.
- It never rains but pours.

Affirmative

- Only a girl can talk like this.
- Only Nisha can solve it.
- As soon as the thief saw the police, he ran away.
- As soon as I heard the noise I came out.
- It always pours, when it rains.
- Everybody likes mangoes.

Negative

- There is no item like this.
- There was none but wept.
- She does not come here very often.
- He never absents himself from office.
- We didn't lose any match.
- His position didn't improve.
- Don't smoke here.
- Don't be impatient.
- Don't make a noise.
- Not many persons were present there.
- Work hard so that you may not fail.
- Run fast so that you may not miss the train.

III. Interchange of Assertive and Interrogative Sentences :

कई Interrogative sentences, व्याकरणात्मक (Grammatical) structure के अनुसार तो देखने में Interrogative लगते हैं, लेकिन उनका आशय प्रश्न पूछना/प्रश्न करना नहीं होता है। ऐसे Interrogative sentences को बिना अर्थ/आशय को परिवर्तित किए हुए Assertive Sentence में बदला जा सकता है।

इस तरह के Interrogative sentences निम्नलिखित दो प्रकार के होते हैं :

- (1) Helping verb (Auxiliary verb) से शुरू होने वाले Interrogative sentences.
- (2) Wh-words से शुरू होने वाले Interrogative sentences.

(1) Helping Verbs (Auxiliaries) से शुरू होने वाले Interrogative sentences :



(1) Interrogative sentence का Structure - verb + Subject +का होता है।

इसे बदलकर Subject + verb + ... के Structure में वाक्य को लिखें।

(2) यदि Interrogative sentence में no/not या अन्य कोई negative word है तो Assertive sentence बनाते समय, उसे हटा दें। यदि Interrogative sentence में कोई negative word नहीं है तो Assertive sentence में ऐसा word लगाना होगा।

Look at the following examples :

Interrogative

- (a) Am I not your friend?
- (b) Isn't she beautiful?
- (c) Didn't I study?
- (d) Can a blind see?
- (e) Don't I love her?
- (f) Shall we ever forget you?
- (g) Haven't I a car?
- (h) Did I tell a lie?
- (i) Don't I know you?
- (j) Does not the Earth revolve round the sun?
- (k) Won't you have a cup of tea?

Assertive

- I am your friend.
- She is beautiful.
- I did study.
- A blind can't see.
- I love her.
- We shall never forget you.
- I have a car.
- I told a lie.
- I know you.
- The earth revolves round the sun.
- Have a cup of tea.

- (2) **Wh-words** से शुरू होने वाले **Interrogative sentences** : इस तरह के Interrogative वाक्यों में यदि कोई Negative word हो, तो Assertive sentence में everyone का प्रयोग किया जाता है। यदि Interrogative sentence में Negative word न हो, तो इसे Assertive sentence में transform करने पर No one/None/No body इत्यादि का प्रयोग किया जाता है। See the following examples :

Interrogative

- (a) Who does not know Amitabh?
- (b) Who does not love his mother?
- (c) Who will tolerate such an insult?
- (d) Who can live more than 100 years?
- (e) Who is more powerful than God?
- (f) Who does not love his country?
- (g) Who can surpass him in intelligence?
- (h) What more can I do?
- (i) Why waste money here?
- (j) When will you have sense?
- (k) Why cry over spilt milk?
- (l) What if you are more intelligent than I?
- (m) Where will I have peace of mind?
- (n) How can I forget you?
- (o) How can I repay you?
- (p) How does it matter, if you lose?

Assertive

- Everyone knows Amitabh.
- Everyone loves his mother.
- No one will tolerate such an insult.
- No one can live more than 100 year.
- No one is more powerful than God.
- Everyone loves his country.
- No one can surpass him in intelligence.
- I can't do any more.
- It is useless wasting money here.
- You will never have sense.
- It is no use crying over spilt milk.
- It does not matter much, even though you are more intelligent than I.
- I will nowhere have peace of mind.
- I can't forget you?
- I can't repay you.
- It does not matter much even if you lose.

IV. Interchange of Exclamatory and Assertive Sentences :

Exclamatory sentences ऐसे sentences होते हैं, जो बेहद आश्चर्य, दुःख, खुशी, क्रोध, नफरत, प्रशंसा इत्यादि को व्यक्त करते हैं। ऐसे वाक्यों को Assertive में बदला जा सकता है एवं Assertive वाक्यों को भी Exclamatory में बदला जा सकता है। इस तरह के वाक्यों में व्यक्त भावना के अनुसार, Assertive में बदलते समय कुछ शब्दों का प्रयोग किया जाता है। Exclamatory वाक्यों को Assertive में बदलने हेतु निम्न प्रक्रिया/नियमों को ध्यानपूर्वक पढ़ें

- (1) What/How से शुरू होने वाले वाक्य—सबसे पहले यह समझें कि Assertive वाक्य का structure क्या है। Assertive वाक्यों का structure होता है—Subject + verb +



यदि Exclamatory वाक्य में What/How के बाद Adjective/Adverb आता है, तो What/How की जगह very का प्रयोग करें। यदि What के बाद noun आया हो, तो वाक्य के भावार्थ के अनुसार, what की जगह great/nice/fine/ wonderful/ strange/marvellous/peculiar/terrible शब्दों को लगाने से Assertive में बदला जाता है।

Look at the following examples :

Exclamatory

- (a) What a bird it was !
- (b) How fast she moves!
- (c) How hot it is !
- (d) What a nice weather it was!
- (e) How odd it looks!
- (f) What a busy life she leads!

Assertive

- It was a beautiful bird.
- She moves very fast.
- It is very hot.
- It was a very nice weather.
- It looks very odd.
- She leads a very busy life.

कई Exclamatory वाक्यों में subject एवं verb व्यक्त नहीं होते हैं, अतः it या किसी subject का प्रयोग करके वाक्यों को Assertive में अग्र प्रकार से transform किया जाता है।

Exclamatory

- (a) What a scene!
- (b) What an art!
- (c) What a hotel!
- (d) What a fall!

Assertive

- It is a beautiful scene.
- It is a great work of art.
- It is a grand hotel.
- It is a great fall.

- (2) कुछ Exclamatory sentences Oh that/would that/Alas इत्यादि से शुरू होते हैं। जैसा हमने पहले बताया कि Assertive वाक्यों का Structure — Subject + verb+ होता है, अतः ऐसे वाक्यों में verb की जगह 'wish' का प्रयोग किया जाता है। कई वाक्यों में wish के बाद 'that' का प्रयोग भी किया जाता है। कुछ में 'It' का प्रयोग भी किया जाता है।

Look at the following examples :

Exclamatory

- (a) Would that I had not wasted my money!
- (b) O that she were young again!
- (c) Alas! she died so young.
- (d) O that I were a king!

Assertive

- I wish I had not wasted my money.
- I wish that she were young again.
- It is sad that she died so young.
- I wish that I were a king.

- (3) कुछ Exclamatory वाक्य Hurrah/ Bravo/ Well-done इत्यादि से शुरू होते हैं एवं खुशी/प्रशंसा का भाव व्यक्त करते हैं। ऐसे वाक्यों को Assertive में बदलते समय It is a matter of+ that का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Look at the following sentences :

Exclamatory

- (a) Bravo! you secured highest marks.
- (b) Hurrah! we have won the match.
- (c) Well done! you get selected.
- (d) Hurrah! he scored a goal.

Assertive

- It is a matter of praise that you secured highest marks.
- It is a matter of joy that we have won the match.
- It is matter of praise that you get selected.
- It is matter of joy that he scored a goal.



कुछ वाक्यों में **fie, fie** का प्रयोग घृणा/तिरस्कार व्यक्त करने हेतु किया जाता है। ऐसे वाक्यों में It is a matter of contempt that का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार से किया जायेगा :

(i) Fie, fie! he is a thief.

It is a matter of contempt that he is a thief.

(ii) Fie, fie! she is a prostitute.

It is a matter of contempt that she is a prostitute.

- (4) कुछ Exclamatory वाक्य if only से शुरू होते हैं, ये वक्त की इच्छा (wish) को व्यक्त करते हैं। इस तरह के वाक्यों हेतु भी I wish का प्रयोग करके इन्हें Assertive में बदला जाता है।

Look at the following sentences :

- | | |
|--|--------------------|
| (a) If only I could meet her once. | <i>Exclamatory</i> |
| I wish to meet her once. | <i>Assertive</i> |
| (b) If only I could once get selected. | <i>Exclamatory</i> |
| I wish to get once selected. | <i>Assertive</i> |

Miscellaneous sentences :

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| (a) How kind of you to help me! | <i>Exclamatory</i> |
| You were kind enough to help me. | <i>Assertive</i> |
| It was kind of you to help me. | <i>Assertive</i> |
| (b) How foolish of him to abuse the chairman! | <i>Exclamatory</i> |
| He was foolish enough to abuse the chairman. | <i>Assertive</i> |
| It was foolish of him to abuse the chairman. | <i>Assertive</i> |
| (c) A navyman ! afraid of water. | <i>Exclamatory</i> |
| It is strange that a navyman should be afraid of water. | <i>Assertive</i> |
| (d) An army man and such a coward! | <i>Exclamatory</i> |
| It is shocking that an army man should be such a coward. | <i>Assertive</i> |
| (e) To think of our getting married ! | <i>Exclamatory</i> |
| It is strange that we should get married. | <i>Assertive</i> |
| (f) To think of my seeing you in this foreign land! | <i>Exclamatory</i> |
| It is strange that I should see you in this foreign land. | <i>Assertive</i> |

Interchange Parts of Speech

वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Part of speech; जैसे : noun, verb, adverb, adjective; को दूसरे में परिवर्तित करने से भी वाक्यों का transformation किया जा सकता है। *See the following examples :*

(1) Changing into Verb :

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| (a) Smoking is <u>injurious</u> to health. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| Smoking <u>injures</u> health. | <i>Verb</i> |
| (b) You should give <u>assistance</u> to him. | <i>Noun</i> |
| You should <u>assist</u> him. | <i>Verb</i> |
| (c) Grahmbell made the <u>invention</u> of telephone. | <i>Noun</i> |
| Grahmbell <u>invented</u> the telephone. | <i>Verb</i> |
| (d) Her action caused <u>disgrace</u> to the country. | <i>Noun</i> |
| Her action <u>disgraced</u> the country. | <i>Verb</i> |
| (e) You must render <u>help</u> to her. | <i>Noun</i> |
| You must <u>help</u> her. | <i>Verb</i> |

(2) Changing into Noun :

- | | |
|--|---------------|
| (a) Who <u>discovered</u> India? | <i>Verb</i> |
| Who made the <u>discovery</u> of India? | <i>Noun</i> |
| (b) Who <u>invented</u> Computer? | <i>Verb</i> |
| Who made the <u>invention</u> of Computer? | <i>Noun</i> |
| (c) Listen to him <u>attentively</u> . | <i>Adverb</i> |
| Listen to him with <u>attention</u> . | <i>Noun</i> |

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| (d) She is <u>healthy</u> . | <i>Adjective</i> |
| She enjoys good <u>health</u> . | <i>Noun</i> |
| (e) Walk <u>carefully</u> . | <i>Adverb</i> |
| Walk with <u>care</u> . | <i>Noun</i> |
| (f) He fought <u>courageously</u> . | <i>Adverb</i> |
| He fought with <u>courage</u> . | <i>Noun</i> |

(3) Changing into Adjective :

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| (a) He confessed his <u>guilt</u> . | <i>Noun</i> |
| He confessed that he was <u>guilty</u> . | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (b) Wine <u>injures</u> liver. | <i>Verb</i> |
| Wine is <u>injurious</u> to liver. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (c) <u>Fortunately</u> she escaped unhurt. | <i>Adverb</i> |
| She was <u>fortunate</u> to escape unhurt. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (d) He solved the puzzle <u>easily</u> . | <i>Adverb</i> |
| It was <u>easy</u> for him to solve the puzzle. | <i>Adjective</i> |

(4) Changing into Adverb :

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| (a) His success is <u>sure</u> . | <i>Adjective</i> |
| He will <u>surely</u> succeed. | <i>Adverb</i> |
| (b) He does not <u>intend</u> to speak. | <i>Verb</i> |
| He does not speak <u>intentionally</u> . | <i>Adverb</i> |
| (c) Sita sang a <u>sweet</u> song. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| Sita sang a song <u>sweetly</u> . | <i>Adverb</i> |
| (d) He fought with <u>courage</u> . | <i>Noun</i> |
| She fought <u>courageously</u> . | <i>Adverb</i> |



One part of speech से another part of speech में बदलना, एक सरल कार्य है लेकिन छात्रों को विभिन्न parts of speech का ज्ञान होना चाहिए। छात्रों को Noun, Verb, Adverb, Adjective आदि की विशेषताओं को अच्छी तरह समझना चाहिए।

Transformation of Conditional Sentences

सामान्यतया Conditional sentences के दो भाग होते हैं, एक भाग में कुछ शर्त दी गई होती है एवं दूसरे भाग में उस शर्त का परिणाम (Result) व्यक्त होता है। ऐसे वाक्यों को वाक्य के भावार्थ के अनुसार, transform किया जाता है।

See the following examples :

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) If you work hard, you will pass. | Unless you work hard you will not pass. |
| Work hard and you will pass. | Work hard in case you want to pass. |
| Should you work hard you would pass. | |
| (b) Had he come to me, I would have helped him. | If he had come to me, I would have helped him. |
| (c) In case you support me, I will make a protest. | If you support me, I will make a protest. |
| Provided you support me, I will make a protest. | |
| (d) One more try and you will achieve it. | If you make one more try, you will achieve it. |
| (e) If she does not turn up, you will get the job. | In case she doesn't turn up you will get the job. |
| Supposing she does not turn up, you will get the job. | |

इस तरह Conditional वाक्यों को Unless/Should/In case/If/Supposing etc. का प्रयोग करके बदला जा सकता है।

Conversion of Simple/Compound/ Complex Sentences

(A) Conversion of Simple Sentence into Compound :

आप जानते हैं कि Simple sentence में एक ही Principal clause होती है (एक ही finite verb होती है), जबकि Compound sentence में दो Principal clauses होती हैं, जो एक-दूसरे से Coordinating conjunction द्वारा जुड़ी रहती हैं। अतः Simple sentence को दो Principal clauses में विभक्त करके, उन्हें Coordinating conjunction द्वारा जोड़ने से Compound sentence बन जाता है। जैसे :

Look at the following examples :

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| (a) In spite of his poverty he is trustworthy. | <i>Simple</i> |
| He is poor yet he is trustworthy. | <i>Compound</i> |
| (b) The sun having risen the fog disappeared. | <i>Simple</i> |
| The sun rose and the fog disappeared. | <i>Compound</i> |
| (c) Besides being beautiful she is intelligent. | <i>Simple</i> |
| She is beautiful as well as she is intelligent. | <i>Compound</i> |
| (d) The chief rewarded the officer for his excellent work. | <i>Simple</i> |
| The clerk did excellent work and so the chief rewarded him. | <i>Compound</i> |
| (e) Seeing a lion he fled away. | <i>Simple</i> |
| He saw a lion and he fled away. | <i>Compound</i> |
| (f) Notwithstanding his problems he is trying again. | <i>Simple</i> |
| He has problems yet he is trying again. | <i>Compound</i> |
| (g) You should work hard to achieve your goal. | <i>Simple</i> |
| You should work hard or you can't achieve your goal. | <i>Compound</i> |
| (h) The officer punished the boy for his misbehaviour. | <i>Simple</i> |
| The boy misbehaved so the officer punished him. | <i>Compound</i> |

(B) Conversion of Compound Sentence into Complex :

Complex sentence में एक Principal clause होती है एवं एक या अधिक Subordinate clause होती है। Complex sentence बनाते समय Compound sentence (दो Principal clause होती हैं) की एक clause को Subordinating conjunction द्वारा दूसरी clause के साथ जोड़ देना होता है। Subordinating conjunction से जिस clause को जोड़ा जाता है। वह एक Subordinate clause बन जाती है। Subordinate clause तीन प्रकार की होती है :

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| (1) Noun clause | (2) Adjective clause |
| (3) Adverb clause. | |

अतः Compound sentence की एक clause को इनमें से कोई भी clause बनाकर, एक Complex sentence बनाया जाता है। वाक्य की स्थिति देखकर ही यह निर्णय लिया जा सकता है कि Subordinate clause किस तरह (Noun/Adjective/Adverb) की बनाई जाती है।

इस हेतु निम्न Subordinating conjunction मुख्यतया प्रयुक्त किए जाते हैं : When, why, where, how, who, which, if that, than, so that, as soon as, else, till, until, unless, because, though, although etc.

Look at the following examples :

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (a) Run fast or you will miss the train. | <i>Compound</i> |
| Unless you run fast you will miss the train. | <i>Complex</i> |
| (b) I am not well so I shall not come to the office. | <i>Compound</i> |
| I shall not come to the office as I am not well. | <i>Complex</i> |

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| (c) She was ill so I helped her.
I helped her because she was ill. | <i>Compound</i>
<i>Complex</i> |
| (d) Check his room and you will find the money.
If you check his room you will find the money. | <i>Compound</i>
<i>Complex</i> |
| (e) He is innocent and I know it.
I know that he is innocent. | <i>Compound</i>
<i>Complex</i> |
| (f) She lost her child and she found it.
She found her child that she lost. | <i>Compound</i>
<i>Complex</i> |

(c) Conversion of Simple Sentence into Complex :

Simple sentence की एक Principal clause को दो clauses में विभक्त कर, एक clause को Principal clause एवं दूसरी clause को Subordinate clause बनानी होती है। Subordinate clause, Principal clause के साथ Subordinating conjunction द्वारा संयुक्त की जाती है।

Look at the following examples :

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| (a) I know his address.
I know what his address is. | <i>Simple</i>
<i>Complex</i> |
| (b) She accepted her guilt.
She accepted that she was guilty. | <i>Simple</i>
<i>Complex</i> |
| (c) You should work hard to achieve your goal.
You should work hard so that you can achieve your goal. | <i>Simple</i>
<i>Complex</i> |
| (d) I drink to enjoy.
I drink so that I can enjoy. | <i>Simple</i>
<i>Complex</i> |
| (e) He is too poor to pay his fees.
He is so poor that he can't pay his fees. | <i>Simple</i>
<i>Complex</i> |
| (f) This is my office.
This is the office where I work. | <i>Simple</i>
<i>Complex</i> |

इसी तरह हम Complex sentence को Simple में तथा Compound sentence को Compound में एवं Compound sentence को Simple में बदल सकते हैं। मुख्य बात है, हमें Simple, Compound एवं Complex sentences की विशेषताओं का ज्ञान होना चाहिए एवं Coordinating/subordinating conjunction की जानकारी होनी चाहिए। हमें Principal clause एवं Subordinating clause (Noun/Adjective/Adverb clause) की जानकारी एवं इनका कहाँ, किस तरह उपयोग किया जाता है यह भी पता होना चाहिए। यदि हमें यह सब कुछ अच्छी तरह से ज्ञात है तो हम conversion बहुत सरलता से कर सकते हैं।



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01.

Convert the following Simple sentences into Compound sentences:

[RAS]

- (1) The teacher punished the boy for disobedience.
- (2) Running at top speed, he got out of breath.
- (3) By his pleasant manners he gained many friends.
- (4) Raleigh, taking off his cloak politely, placed it in the muddy street.
- (5) In this tower sat the poet gazing on the sea.

Transform the following sentences according to the directions given:

[RPSC (RAS) Ajmer]

- (6) If you do not take exercise, you will be ill. (Convert into a Compound sentence.)
- (7) The moment which is lost, is lost forever. (Convert into a Simple sentence.)
- (8) Self-made men are always respected. (Turn into a Complex sentence.)
- (9) He will not pay unless he is compelled. (Turn into a Simple sentence.)
- (10) In the absence of the cat the mice will play. (Turn into a Complex sentence.)
- (11) The everyone's surprise, the enterprise completely failed. (Convert into a Compound sentence.)
- (12) You must work hard to win the first prize. (Convert into a Compound sentence.)
- (13) He was very tired but he kept on working. (Turn into a Simple sentence.)
- (14) His silence proves his guilt. (Turn into a Complex sentence.)
- (15) Consult the dictionary and you will find the meaning of this word. (Convert into a Complex sentence.)

02.

Join the following pairs into single sentence:

[RPSC (RAS) Ajmer]

- (1) Storms may come. They may destroy the dam.
- (2) The girl has gone away. I wanted to marry her.
- (3) The king talked to a woman. The woman's four sons had been killed in the war.
- (4) He is very clever. He cannot be deceived.
- (5) Hiroshima was once a prosperous town. It is now a heap of ruins.
- (6) The moon rose. Their journey was not ended.

03.

Rewrite the following sentences using 'than' (Superlative to Comparative Degree):

- (1) Switzerland is the most beautiful country in the world. (use 'more beautiful')
- (2) Delhi is the biggest city of India. (use 'bigger')
- (3) Mahima is the most beautiful girl in the class. (use 'beautiful')
- (4) Morning walk is the best exercise for us. (use 'better')
- (5) Premji Azim is the richest man in India. (use 'richer')

04.

Rewrite the following sentences using 'as as' (Comparative to Positive Degree):

- (1) Nikita is taller than Babita. (use 'tall')
- (2) Reeta is more intelligent than Nita. (use 'intelligent')
- (3) America is richer than India. (use 'rich')
- (4) Kavita's hair is more beautiful than Vimla's hair. (use 'beautiful')
- (5) Alwar is bigger than Tonk. (use 'big')

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| (6) She is taller than any other girl in the school. | (use 'tall') |
| (7) Mohan is poorer than any other man in the village. | (use 'poor') |
| (8) My mother is more beautiful than any other today in our colony. | (use 'beautiful') |
| (9) Ganga is more famous river than any other river in India. | (use 'as famous as') |
| (10) Jodhpur is hotter than Shimla. | (use 'hot') |

05.

Change the following sentences from Comparative to Superlative :

- | | |
|--|----------------------|
| (1) Subhash Chandra Bose was greater than any other leader of India. | (use 'the greatest') |
| (2) Kolkata is bigger than any other city of India. | (use 'the biggest') |
| (3) Iron is heavier than any other metal. | (use 'the heaviest') |
| (4) Everest is higher mountain in the world. | (use 'the highest') |
| (5) Sonu is fatter than any other boy in the house. | (use 'the fattest') |
| (6) Rani is better than any other girl. | (use 'the best') |

06.

Interchange of Exclamatory sentences to Assertive sentences :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) How cute she is ! | (2) What a beautiful sight it is! |
| (3) What a stupid she is! | (4) What a big building it is! |
| (5) Oh that, I were the queen of Britain ! | (6) O that, I were a bird ! |
| (7) Alas! she died in an accident. | (8) Bravo! you have done well. |
| (9) Hurrah ! I won the game. | (10) What an attractive person he is ! |
| (11) What a good book it is! | (12) How fast she reads ! |
| (13) What a fine weather it is! | (14) What a sight it is! |
| (15) How funny! | (16) What a hut! |
| (17) What a style! | (18) Oh that, I had the wings of bird! |
| (19) Oh, what a beautiful car to drive ! | (20) If I were Miss India ! |

07.

Interchange of Exclamatory sentences to Assertive sentences :

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Such a woman and my wife! | (2) How kind of her to help me! |
| (3) Fie!fie! you are a murderer. | (4) How sweetly she sings! |
| (5) How sad was the sight of that deserted place! | (6) What a girl she is! |
| (7) What a lovely flower! | (8) How strange! |
| (9) Would that I had never left my village! | (10) Would that my son were alive! |
| (11) O for a cup of tea! | (12) If only I could find my lost love! |
| (13) A child and so brave! | (14) How clever of him to cheat her! |
| (15) How cool the moonlit night is! | (16) Would that I were an I.P.S. officer! |
| (17) If I could only see her! | |

08.

Transform the following sentences into Assertive :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Is this the kind of dress to wear in marriage party? | |
| (2) Won't you come in? | |
| (3) Can the dumb speak? | (4) Didn't I tell her to stay here? |
| (5) Is it not a wise step? | (6) Why wait for him? |
| (7) Do you like to lose money? | (8) Haven't I warned you against the danger? |
| (9) Why to accuse him? | (10) How can one change one's nature? |

09.

Use the following words as Noun and as Verb :

- (1) Close (2) Court (3) Back (4) Head (5) Light

10.

Use the following words as Noun and as Adjective :

- (1) Fast (2) Less (3) Like (4) Down (5) Master

11.

Use the following words as Adverb and as Adjective :

- (1) Round (2) Next (3) Near (4) Well (5) Slow

12.

Transform the following Simple sentences into Compound sentences :

- (1) He should work hard to pass the examination.
- (2) Besides making a promise, she keeps it.
- (3) For all the problems, he is happy.
- (4) The principal rusticated the boy for misbehaviour.
- (5) The sun having risen, the fog dispersed.
- (6) He died a brilliant death, leaving an example to the world.
- (7) Having finished his work, he went to market.
- (8) Owing to ill health, she could not prepare the breakfast.

13.

Transform the following Simple sentences into Complex :

- (1) She owed her success to my support.
- (2) Wise persons do not talk nonsense.
- (3) His silence proves his guilt.
- (4) Non-vegetarians are not allowed to enter into the temple.
- (5) Listen to the elders.
- (6) We are sure to win the match.
- (7) Intelligent students always succeed.
- (8) His ambition is to become an engineer.
- (9) Tell me your address.
- (10) I have no money to spend.

14.

Transform the following Compound sentences into Complex sentences :

- (1) He is a poor man, but he is honest man.
- (2) My brother gave me a watch and I have lost it.
- (3) She was very tired and so she didn't cook food.
- (4) She is still in teens, but she has the wisdom of a matured woman.
- (5) I have lost the purse but I have found it now.
- (6) She is very affable and so I love her.
- (7) He is doing his best and I am sure of it.
- (8) Be sincere and you will be respected by everyone.
- (9) Send the money in advance or you will not get the magazine.
- (10) You are a teetotaller and I know it.

15.*Transform the following Affirmative sentences into Negative sentences :*

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| (1) My sister is wise. | (2) That is impossible. |
| (3) I shall always remember your kindness. | (4) He is always careful. |
| (5) A true man is always right. | (6) Sita's voice is Harsh. |
| (7) We like him. | (8) This student is dull. |
| (9) We are innocent. | (10) She is always present . |
| (11) They won the game. | (12) I always treat her fairly. |
| (13) This knife is blunt. | (14) Everyone was hopeful. |

16.*Transform the following sentences into Negative sentences :*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| (1) She is a bad teacher. | (2) They were doubtful whether it was her. |
| (3) Ram is a dishonest man. | (4) He is sometimes foolish. |
| (5) My uncle is a poor man. | (6) Always speak the truth. |
| (7) I am always happy. | (8) Everyone hates you. |
| (9) Everyone hides his sorrow. | (10) Everyone praised her dance. |
| (11) I love him. | (12) She had clothes. |
| (13) Every rose has thorn. | |

17.*Transform the following sentences into Question form :*

- (1) Only the rich can buy that house.
- (2) Only Ram can solve this problem.
- (3) Only Manish came to see you.
- (4) As soon as the thief saw the police, he ran away.
- (5) As soon as he saw the monkey, he fled.
- (6) As soon as I went inside, it began to rain.
- (7) Only seniors need apply.
- (8) He disbelieves me.
- (9) He failed to catch the thief.
- (10) It is wrong to do this work.
- (11) Nisha is always sure.
- (12) Ram will stay here.
- (13) She dislikes you.

18.*Rewrite the following sentences :*

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| (1) Sachin is the best cricket player in India. | (use 'better') |
| (2) Mr. Ganguli is the richest man of our city. | (use 'richer') |
| (3) Neetu is the cleverest girl of our college. | (use 'cleverer') |
| (4) Hockey is the most popular game in India. | (use 'more popular') |
| (5) Akbar was the greatest muslim ruler in India. | (use 'greater') |
| (6) Morning walk is the best exercise for young people. | (use 'better') |
| (7) Pt Nehru was one of the greatest leader of India. | (use 'greater') |
| (8) Rahul Dravid is one of the best batsman of our country. | (use 'better') |
| (9) Indira Gandhi was the most impressive Prime Minister of India. | (use 'more impressive') |
| (10) Nisha is the most intelligent student in the school. | (use 'more intelligent') |

19.

Rewrite the following sentences using Positive Degree :

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| (1) Mumbai is the best part of our country. | (use 'good') |
| (2) My brother is the wisest man in the office. | (use 'wise') |
| (3) Naresh is the poorest man in our village. | (use 'poor') |
| (4) Mr. Rohan is the most popular member in our office. | (use 'popular') |
| (5) Iron is the most useful metal. | (use 'useful') |
| (6) Bikaner is the hottest city in Rajasthan. | (use 'hot') |
| (7) Shatabdi Express is the fastest train. | (use 'fast') |
| (8) Nisha is the tallest girl of our school. | (use 'tall') |
| (9) Rajasthan is the most desert state of India. | (use 'desert') |
| (10) America is the richest country in the world. | (use 'rich') |
| (11) A lion is the strongest animal in the forest. | (use 'strong') |



SOLUTIONS



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

Solution TYE 01

- (1) The boy was disobedient and so the teacher punished him.
- (2) He ran at top speed so he got out of breath.
- (3) He has pleasant manners and therefore he gained many friends.
- (4) Raleigh took off his cloak politely and placed it in the muddy street.
- (5) The poet sat in this tower and gazed on the sea.
- (6) Take exercise otherwise you will be ill.
- (7) The moment once lost is lost forever.
- (8) The men who are self-made are always respected.
- (9) He will pay only under compulsion.
- (10) The mice will play when the cat is absent.
- (11) The enterprise completely failed and it surprised everyone.
- (12) You must work hard so that you may win the first prize.
- (13) In spite of being very tired he kept on working.
- (14) The fact that he is silent proves his guilt. Or
His silence proves that he is guilty.
- (15) If you consult the dictionary you will find the meaning of this word.

Solution TYE 02

- (1) Storms may come and destroy the dam.
- (2) I wanted to marry the girl who had gone away.
- (3) The king talked to the woman whose four sons had been killed in the war.
- (4) He is too clever to be deceived. Or
He is so clever that he cannot be deceived.
- (5) Hiroshima, which was once a prosperous town, is now a heap of ruins.
- (6) The moon rose before the end of their journey.

Solution TYE 03

- (1) Switzerland is more beautiful than any other country in the world.
- (2) Delhi is bigger than any other city in the world.
- (3) Mahima is more beautiful than any other girl in the class.
- (4) Morning walk is better than any other exercise for us.
- (5) Premji Azim is richer than any other man in India.

Solution TYE 04

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) Babita is not as tall as Nikita. | (2) Nita is not as intelligent as Reeta. |
| (3) India is not so rich as America. | (4) Vimla's hair is not as beautiful as Kavita's hair. |
| (5) Tonk is not as big as Alwar. | (6) No other girl in the school is as tall as she. |
| (7) No other man in the village is as poor as Mohan. | |
| (8) No other lady in our colony is as beautiful as my mother. | |
| (9) No other river in India is as famous as Ganga. | |
| (10) Shimla is not as hot as Jodhpur. | |

Solution TYE 05

- (1) Subhash Chandra Bose was the greatest leader of India.
- (2) Kolkata is the biggest city of India.
- (3) Iron is the heaviest metal.
- (4) Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- (5) Sonu is the fattest boy in the house.
- (6) Rani is the best girl.

Solution TYE 06

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) She is very cute. | (2) It is a very beautiful sight. |
| (3) She is a great stupid. | (4) It is a very big building. |
| (5) I wish that I were the queen of Britain. | (6) I wish I were a bird. |
| (7) It is sad that she died in an accident. | (8) It is a matter of praise that you have done well. |
| (9) It is joyful that I won the game. | (10) He is a very attractive person. |
| (11) It is a very good book. | (12) She reads very fast. |
| (13) It is very fine weather. | (14) It is a lovely sight. |
| (15) It is very funny. | (16) It is a beautiful hut. |
| (17) It is a good style. | (18) I wish that I had the wings of bird. |
| (19) I wish that I had a beautiful car to drive. | (20) I wish that I were Miss India. |

Solution TYE 07

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) It is shocking that such a woman should be my wife. | (2) She was kind enough to help me. |
| (3) It is a matter of contempt that you are a murderer. | (4) She sings very sweetly. |
| (5) That deserted place presented very sad sight. | (6) She is a peculiar girl. |
| (7) This is a very lovely flower. | (8) It is very strange. |
| (9) I wish I had never left my village. | (10) I wish my son were alive. |
| (11) I wish I had a cup of tea. | (12) I wish I could find my lost love. |
| (13) It is strange that a child should be so brave. | (14) He was clever enough to cheat her. |
| (15) The moonlit night is very cool. | (16) I wish I were an I.P.S. officer. |
| (17) I earnestly desire to see her. | |

Solution TYE 08

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| (1) This is not the kind of dress to wear in marriage party. | (3) The dumb can't speak. |
| (2) You come in please. | (5) It is a wise step. |
| (4) I told her to stay here. | (7) You do not like to lose money. |
| (6) It is useless to wait for him. | (9) It is wrong to accuse him. |
| (8) I have warned you against the danger. | |
| (10) One can't change one's nature. | |

Solution TYE 09

- | | | |
|--------------------|---|-------------|
| (1) Close : | The meeting came to a close at 6 p.m. | <i>Noun</i> |
| | Please close the shop now. | <i>Verb</i> |
| (2) Court : | I am going to attend the court of law tomorrow. | <i>Noun</i> |
| | She is regularly courting her boss. | <i>Verb</i> |
| (3) Back : | He carried the load on his back. | <i>Noun</i> |
| | I am not going to back your arguments. | <i>Verb</i> |
| (4) Head : | He has a big head full of white hair. | <i>Noun</i> |
| | She headed the list of investors. | <i>Verb</i> |
| (5) Light : | There is no light in the corridor. | <i>Noun</i> |
| | Light the candle in the room. | <i>Verb</i> |

Solution TYE 10

- | | | |
|---------------------|--|------------------|
| (1) Fast : | She keeps fast on every Tuesday. | <i>Noun</i> |
| | He is a fast runner. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (2) Less : | I won't be contended with less. | <i>Noun</i> |
| | She paid less attention to sports. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (3) Like : | You cannot see her like again. | <i>Noun</i> |
| | They are man of like physique and stature. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (4) Down : | I have seen the ups and downs of business. | <i>Noun</i> |
| | The down train was very late yesterday. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (5) Master : | She is my master. | <i>Noun</i> |
| | He conceived a master strategy. | <i>Adjective</i> |

Solution TYE 11

- | | | |
|--------------------|---|------------------|
| (1) Round : | He brought her round to my point of view. | <i>Adverb</i> |
| | It is a round floor. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (2) Next : | What next are you planning? | <i>Adverb</i> |
| | I shall meet you at the next crossing. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (3) Near : | Come near and sit here. | <i>Adverb</i> |
| | She is my near relative. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (4) Well : | Well begun is half done. | <i>Adverb</i> |
| | You are well now. | <i>Adjective</i> |
| (5) Slow : | She is working in a slow manner. | <i>Adverb</i> |
| | She is a slow worker. | <i>Adjective</i> |

Solution TYE 12

- (1) He should work hard or he will not pass the examination.
- (2) She not only makes a promise but also keeps it.
- (3) Though he is in great problems, yet he is happy.
- (4) The boy misbehaved so the principal rusticated him.
- (5) The sun rose and the fog dispersed.
- (6) He died a brilliant death and left an example to the world.
- (7) He finished his work and he went to market.
- (8) She was in ill health and so she could not prepare the breakfast.

Solution TYE 13

- (1) It was due to my support that she succeeded.
- (2) The persons who are wise do not talk nonsense.
- (3) The fact that he is silent proves his guilt.
- (4) If you are a non-vegetarian, you can't be allowed to enter into the temple.
- (5) Listen to what the elders say.
- (6) We are sure that we shall win the match.
- (7) The students who are intelligent always succeed.
- (8) His ambition is that he wants to become an engineer.
- (9) Tell me where you live.
- (10) I have no money that I can spend.

Solution TYE 14

- (1) He is a honest man although he is poor.
- (2) I have lost the watch which my brother gave me.
- (3) As she was very tired, she didn't cook food.
- (4) She has the wisdom of a matured woman, although she is still in teens.
- (5) I have found the purse that I had lost.
- (6) I love her because she is very affable.
- (7) I am sure that he is doing his best.
- (8) If you are sincere, you will be respected by everyone.
- (9) You will not get the magazine unless you send the money in advance.
- (10) I know that you are a teetotaller.

Solution TYE 15

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (1) My sister is not a fool. | (2) That is not possible. |
| (3) I shall not forget your kindness. | (4) He is never careless. |
| (5) A true man is never wrong. | (6) Sita's voice is not sweet. |
| (7) We do not dislike him. | (8) This student is not intelligent. |
| (9) We are not guilty. | (10) She is never absent. |
| (11) They did not lose the game. | (12) I never treat her badly. |
| (13) This knife is not sharp. | (14) No one was without hope. |

Solution TYE 16

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) She is not a good teacher. | (2) They were not sure whether it was her. |
| (3) Ram is not an honest man. | (4) He is not always foolish. |
| (5) My uncle is not a rich man. | (6) Never tell a lie. |
| (7) I am never unhappy. | (8) There is no one who does not hate you. |
| (9) There is no one who does not hide his sorrow. | (10) There was none who did not praise her dance. |
| (11) I am not without love for him. | (12) She is not without clothes. |
| (13) There is no rose without thorn. | |

Solution TYE 17

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| (1) None but the rich can buy that house. | |
| (2) None but Ram can solve this problem. | |
| (3) None but Manish came to see you. | |
| (4) No sooner did the thief see the police than he ran away. | |
| (5) No sooner did he see the monkey than he fled. | |
| (6) No sooner did I go inside than it began to rain. | |
| (7) None but seniors need apply. | (8) He did not believe me. |
| (9) He could not catch the thief. | (10) It is not right to do this work. |
| (11) Nisha is never in doubt. | (12) Ram will not go anywhere. |
| (13) She does not like you. | |

Solution TYE 18

- (1) Sachin is better than any other cricket player in India.
- (2) Mr. Ganguli is richer than any other man of our city.
- (3) Neetu is cleverer than any other girl of our college.
- (4) Hockey is more popular than any other game in India.
- (5) Akbar was greater than any other Muslim ruler in India.
- (6) Morning walk is better than any other exercise for young people.
- (7) Pt. Nehru was greater than most other leaders of India.
- (8) Rahul Dravid is better than most other batsman of our country.
- (9) Indira Gandhi was more impressive than any other Prime Minister of India.
- (10) Nisha is more intelligent than any other student in the school.

Solution TYE 19

- (1) No other part of our country is so good as Mumbai.
- (2) No other man in the office is as wise as my brother.
- (3) No other man in our village is as poor as Naresh.
- (4) No other member in our office is so popular as Mr. Rohan.
- (5) No other metal is so useful as Iron.
- (6) No other city in Rajasthan is so hot as Bikaner.
- (7) No other train is so fast as Shatabdi Express.
- (8) No other girl is as tall as Nisha.
- (9) No other state of India is so desert as Rajasthan.
- (10) No other country in the world is so rich as America.
- (11) No other animal in the forest is as strong as lion.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

सामान्यतया Conditional sentences में दो clauses होती हैं :

- (1) If clause, (2) Main clause

If clause, condition को बताती है, एवं Main clause कार्य के पूर्ण होने या न होने को व्यक्त करती है।

Conditional sentences को मुख्य रूप से निम्नलिखित तीन भागों में वर्गीकृत किया जा सकता है :

- (A) जब If clause Present tense में हो।
 (B) जब If clause Past tense में हो।
 (C) जब If clause Past Perfect tense में हो।

(A) Conditional Sentences : If Clause in Present Tense :

- (1) जब If clause, Present tense में होती है, तो Main clause में Future tense निम्न प्रकार से प्रयोग में आ सकता है :

- (a) If it rains, he will not come in time.
 (b) If he runs fast, he will reach in time.
 (c) If the fog gets thicker, the plane may be late.
 (d) If it stops snowing, we can reach safely.
 (e) If you want to lose weight, you should eat less bread.
 (f) If you want to lose weight eat less bread.
 (g) If you meet Sita in the party, could you tell her to ring me?

इस तरह के वाक्यों में जिनमें If clause Present में है तथा Main clause में Future का प्रयोग होता है, वह कार्य के पूर्ण होने की probability/ability को व्यक्त करते हैं। ध्यान रखिए जब Main clause में Future का प्रयोग किया है तो If clause में will/shall etc. का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

- (2) जब If clause Present में है एवं Main clause भी Present में है तो ऐसे वाक्य स्वतः (automatic) ही कार्य के होने को व्यक्त करते हैं। जैसे :
- (a) If you heat ice it turns to water.
 (b) If you boil water it turns to vapours.
 (c) If there is shortage of a commodity, its price goes up.

- (3) If + Present continuous का प्रयोग वर्तमान में होने वाले कार्य या Future arrangement को व्यक्त करते हैं। जैसे :
- (a) If you are waiting for a taxi, you should better go there.
 - (b) If you are looking for Raju, you may find him in the park.
 - (c) If you are staying for another day, I'll ask the manager to charge you at concessionary rate.
 - (d) If you are going to purchase a car, I will ask my assistant to show you the dealer's shop.
- (4) If + Present Perfect Conditional sentence
- (a) If you have finished dinner, I will ask the waiter for ice cream.
 - (b) If she has written the thesis, I will send it to the professor.
 - (c) If you haven't seen the Victoria Palace we would better go there today.

(B) Conditional Sentences : If Clause in Past Tense

- (1) If clause Past tense में है एवं Main clause में would का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :
- (a) If I had an umbrella I would lend it to you.
(But I haven't an umbrella.)
यदि मेरे पास छतरी होती तो मैं तुम्हें दे देता। (लेकिन मेरे पास छतरी नहीं है।)
 - (b) If I had a briefcase, I would give it to her.
(But I haven't a briefcase.)
यदि मेरे पास ब्रीफकेस होता तो मैं उसे दे देता। (लेकिन मेरे पास ब्रीफकेस नहीं है।)
ये वाक्य वर्तमान स्थिति को व्यक्त करते हैं। वस्तुतः If clause में Past tense का प्रयोग Past action को व्यक्त करता ही नहीं है।



*had के बाद noun का प्रयोग है एवं Main clause में would के बाद Verb-I का प्रयोग हुआ है।
If + subject + had + noun + would + V-I*

- (2) If clause में verb की II form का प्रयोग। जैसे :
- (a) If he tried to threaten me I would inform his father.
(But I don't expect that he will try to threaten me.)
यदि उसने मुझे धमकाने का प्रयास किया होता तो मैंने उसके पिता को सूचित कर दिया होता।
 - (b) If a thief came into my room I would call you.
(But I don't expect a thief to come into my room.)
यदि चोर मेरे कमरे में आया होता तो मैंने तुम्हें बुला लिया होता।
 - (c) If she dyed her hair green everyone would laugh at her.
(But I don't expect that she will dye her hair green.)
यदि उसने बाल हरे रंग में रंगे होते तो प्रत्येक उस पर हँसा होता।
इस तरह के वाक्यों में भी If clause में Past tense का प्रयोग, वास्तविक Past नहीं है, न कोई Past action सूचित करते हैं।
इस तरह के वाक्यों में If clause में verb की II form का तथा Main clause में would + V-I का प्रयोग होता है।

If + subject + V-II + ...would + V-I



Main clause में *would* की जगह *might/could* इत्यादि का भी प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। *would* का प्रयोग *certainty* को व्यक्त करता है जबकि *might* का प्रयोग *possibility* तथा *could* का प्रयोग *ability* को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :

- (a) *If he tried again he would pass. (certain result)*
- (b) *If he tried again he could pass. (ability)*
- (c) *If he tried again he might pass. (possibility)*

(3) यदि If clause में भी Past Indefinite हो एवं Main clause में भी Past Indefinite हो तो ऐसे वाक्य एक के बाद तुरन्त दूसरा कार्य habitually/automatically होने को व्यक्त करते हैं। जैसे :

- (a) *If anyone abused him he became angry.*

यदि किसी ने उसे गाली दी तो वह गुस्सा हो गया।

- (b) *If she interrupted him he got angry.*

यदि उसने उसे टोका तो वह गुस्सा हुआ।

- (c) *If there was a scarcity of milk, its prices went up.*

यदि कभी दूध की कमी हुई तो उसकी कीमतें बढ़ीं।

- (d) *If there was a short supply of any commodity, prices of that commodity increased.*

यदि कभी किसी चीज की कमी हुई तो उसकी कीमतें बढ़ीं।

इस तरह के वाक्य habitual or automatic action को व्यक्त करते हैं। वाक्यों में Past tense, Past time के actions को ही व्यक्त करते हैं।

(C) Conditional Sentences : If Clause in Past Perfect Tense :

इस तरह के वाक्यों का structure निम्न प्रकार का होता है :

If + subject + had + V-III + would have + V-III

- (a) *If he had come to me I would have helped him.*

(But he didn't come to me.)

यदि वह मेरे पास आता तो मैं उसकी सहायता करता। (लेकिन वह मेरे पास नहीं आया।)

- (b) *If she had invited me I would have attended the function.*

(But she did not invite me.)

यदि वह मुझे बुलाती तो मैं कार्यक्रम में उपस्थित होता। (लेकिन उसने मुझे नहीं बुलाया।)

- (c) *If he had tried to cheat me I would have dismissed him.*

(But he didn't try to cheat me.)

यदि उसने मुझे ठगने का प्रयास किया होता तो मैं उसे बर्खास्त कर देता।

(लेकिन उसने मुझे ठगने का प्रयास नहीं किया।)



- (1) इस तरह के वाक्यों में Main clause में would की जगह could या might का भी प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। could का प्रयोग ability को तथा might का प्रयोग possibility को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) If we had found her earlier we could have saved her life. (ability)
यदि हम उसे पहले ढूँढ लेते तो उसकी जान बचा सकते थे।
- (b) If we had found her earlier we might have saved her life. (possibility)
यदि हम उसे पहले ढूँढ लेते तो सम्भवतया उसकी जान बचा सकते थे।
- (2) Had का प्रयोग Subject से पहले करने पर if को omit किया जा सकता है। निम्न दोनों वाक्यों का अर्थ समान होता है।
- (a) If he had come to me I would have helped him.
(b) Had he come to me I would have helped him.
- (3) If clause में Past perfect continuous का भी प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार किया जा सकता है :
- I was wearing helmet. If hadn't been wearing the helmet I would have been seriously injured.

Other Types of Conditional Sentences

- (A) If clause के साथ would का प्रयोग करके निम्न Conditional sentences बनाए जा सकते हैं :
- (a) If you would like to come I will arrange a party for you.
(b) If you would care to see the photos I will bring them for you.
(c) If he would like to leave his scooter here he can do so.



जब if clause में would का प्रयोग होता है तो Main clause में Simple future का प्रयोग होता है।

- (B) If + should का प्रयोग करके निम्न Conditional sentences बनते हैं :
- (a) If you should have any difficulty in getting newspaper, ring at this number.
(b) If these packets should arrive in a damaged condition, please inform the company at once.
इस तरह के वाक्यों को निम्न प्रकार से भी लिखा जा सकता है :
Should these packets arrive in a damaged condition, please inform the company at once.
Should का प्रयोग यहाँ possibility को व्यक्त करता है, लेकिन ऐसी possibility जो मुश्किल (unlikely) है।
- (C) If + were के प्रयोग से भी Conditional sentences बनते हैं। जैसे :
- (a) If I were you, I would forgive him.
(b) If I were you, I would punish him.
यदि मैं If I were you का यहाँ अर्थ यदि मैं तुम्हारी जगह होता से है।
- (D) Use of 'Until & Unless' in Conditional sentences :
- Until :** का अर्थ होता है : जब तक। यह समय के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त होता है। Until के साथ सामान्यतया वाक्य में Not का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे :
- (a) Until he comes back you will wait for him.
जब तक वह वापस न आ जाए तुम उसकी प्रतीक्षा करोगे।
- (b) I will stay here until you complete your work.
जब तक तुम अपना कार्य पूर्ण न कर लोगे मैं यहीं रुकूँगा।
- Unless :** Unless का अर्थ होता है : अगर नहीं। यह भी एक नकारात्मक शब्द है। सामान्यतया Unless के साथ भी not का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। Unless का प्रयोग किसी अन्य शर्त के पूरी होने के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) You cannot pass unless you attend the college.
अगर तुम कॉलेज में उपस्थित नहीं रहोगे तो पास नहीं हो सकते।
- (b) I cannot go to America unless I have a visa.
अगर मेरे पास वीसा नहीं होगा तो मैं अमेरिका नहीं जा सकता।

See the difference :

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| (a) You will wait here unless the train arrives. | Incorrect |
| You will wait here until the train arrives. | Correct |
| (b) You cannot achieve your goal until you work hard | Incorrect |
| You cannot achieve your goal unless you work hard. | Correct |



Unless की जगह Until एवं Until की जगह Unless का प्रयोग न करें। Until का प्रयोग समय के सन्दर्भ में तथा Unless का प्रयोग किसी शर्त (condition) के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है।

- (E) **Use of 'In case' in Conditional sentences :** 'In case' का प्रयोग Conditional sentences में भविष्य में किसी घटना के होने की सम्भावना को व्यक्त करता है 'In case' का अर्थ होता है 'यदि ऐसा हो'।

Look at the following examples :

- (a) Inform me in case you need more money.
यदि तुम्हें और धन की आवश्यकता हो (यदि ऐसा हो) तो मुझे सूचित करें।
- (b) Turn on the light in case you need my help.
यदि मेरी सहायता की आवश्यकता हो (यदि ऐसा हो) तो लाइट जला देना।
- (c) Ring my doorbell in case he comes here.
यदि वह यहाँ आता है तो मेरे दरवाजे की घण्टी बजा देना।

- (F) **Use of 'So long' in Conditional sentences :** 'So long' (जब तक) का प्रयोग Conditional sentences में निम्न प्रकार होता है :

- (a) I shall support him so long he is here.
जब तक वह यहाँ है मैं उसका समर्थन करूँगा।
- (b) You can stay here so long the owner is out of station.
जब तक मालिक बाहर है, तुम यहाँ रुक सकते हो।
- (c) So long I am here I will assist in your work.
जब तक मैं यहाँ हूँ मैं तुम्हारे कार्य में मदद करूँगा।

- (G) **Use of 'Provided' in Conditional sentences :** Provided का अर्थ होता है : शर्त है कि। Provided का प्रयोग Conditional Sentences में निम्न प्रकार होता है :

- (a) I shall attend the meeting provided he also attends.
मैं बैठक में उपस्थित होऊँगा, शर्त है कि वह भी बैठक में उपस्थित रहे।
- (b) We shall support you provided you favour us.
हम तुम्हें समर्थन देंगे, शर्त है कि तुम हमारे पक्ष में कार्य करो।
- (c) I can pay you rent provided you get the roof repaired.
मैं तुम्हें किराया दे सकता हूँ, शर्त है कि तुम छत की मरम्मत कराओ।

- (H) **Use of 'Suppose' in Conditional sentences :** 'Suppose' का प्रयोग Conditional sentences में निम्न प्रकार होता है। 'Suppose' का अर्थ होता है मान लीजिए या मान लो। जैसे :

- (a) Suppose a monkey comes here what will you do?
मान लो एक बन्दर यहाँ आ जाता है तो आप क्या करेंगे?
- (b) Suppose she doesn't agree what can you do?
मान लीजिए वह सहमत नहीं होती है तो आप क्या कर सकते हैं?
- (c) Suppose he didn't turn up, what would you do?
मान लो वह नहीं आया तो आप क्या करेंगे?
- (I) Use of 'But for' in Conditional sentences : 'But for' का अर्थ है : 'यदि ऐसा न हुआ होता' 'But for' का प्रयोग 'if it hadn't happened' के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे :
- (a) But for his help Ramesh would have been ruined.
यदि वह सहायता नहीं करता तो रमेश बर्बाद हो गया होता।
- (b) But for the flood, I would have been arrived here yesterday.
यदि बाढ़ नहीं आई होती तो मैं यहाँ कल ही आ गया होता।
- (c) But for your company I would have been bored.
यदि तुम्हारा साथ न होता तो मैं बोर हो गया होता।



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01

Correct the following sentences :

- (1) If he came to me, I would have given him a pen.
- (2) Had he invited me, I would attend the function.
- (3) If he had telephoned me, I would have gave him the address.
- (4) If a monkey came here, what you will do?
- (5) If I had an umbrella, I would have given it to her.

02

Correct the following sentences :

- (1) If he will work hard, he will get promotion.
- (2) Unless he will ask me, I shall not help him.
- (3) If I had a briefcase, I will have lend it to her.
- (4) If you will heat ice, it may turn to water.
- (5) If you are looking for Sita, you would find her with Ram.

03

Correct the following sentences :

- (1) If I was you, I would dismiss him.
- (2) Unless he comes back, wait for him.
- (3) Until you work hard, you can't beat him.
- (4) Suppose she does not agree, what could you do?
- (5) If he tried again, he can pass.

04

Fill in the blanks choosing the appropriate word from the brackets :

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| (1) I will stay here you come. | (until/unless) |
| (2) you work hard, you can't secure first position. | (Until/Unless) |
| (3) If I you, I would forgive him. | (was/were) |
| (4) If I were him, I dismiss you. | (will/would) |
| (5) If it rains, he not come. | (will/would) |
| (6) If you boil water it to vapours | (turns/will turn) |
| (7) If you are waiting for a taxi, you better go there. | (should/would have) |
| (8) If he had come here I given him a room to stay. | (would/would have) |
| (9) If she me, I would have attended the function. | (had invited/invited) |
| (10) If he tried again he pass. | (will/would) |



SOLUTIONS



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

Solution TYE 01

- (1) If he came to me I would give him a pen.
Or
 If he had come to me, I would have given him a pen.
- (2) Had he invited me, I would have attended the function.
- (3) If he had telephoned me, I would have given him the address.
- (4) If a monkey came here what would you do?
- (5) If I had an umbrella I would give it to her.

Solution TYE 02

- (1) If he works hard, he will get promotion.
- (2) Unless he asks me I shall not help him.
- (3) If I had a briefcase, I would lend it to her.
- (4) If you heat ice, it turns to water.
- (5) If you are looking for Sita, you will find her with Ram.

Solution TYE 03

- (1) If I were you, I would dismiss him.
- (2) Until he comes back, wait for him.
- (3) Unless you work hard, you can't beat him.
- (4) Suppose she does not agree, what can you do?
- (5) If he tried again, he could pass.

Solution TYE 04

- (1) until, (2) Unless, (3) were, (4) would, (5) will, (6) turns,
 (7) should, (8) would have, (9) had invited, (10) would.

UNENGLISH & SUPERFLUOUS EXPRESSIONS

इस chapter में ऐसे English expressions/phrases को बताया जा रहा है जिनका प्रयोग काफी प्रचलित है और अंग्रेजी भाषा का हिन्दीकरण किया गया प्रतीत होता है। ऐसे phrases/expressions का प्रयोग किया जाना गलत है, छात्रों को ऐसे phrases/expressions का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए।

- (1) **Females** : Females का प्रयोग women के लिए किया जाना गलत है। Females से sex का ज्ञान होता है।
Male sex or Female sex.
The Females of my house do not agree to this proposal. *Incorrect*
The women of my house do not agree to this proposal. *Correct*
- (2) **Family Man** : Family Man का प्रयोग छात्रों द्वारा A man with a Family के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। यह गलत है, पूर्णतया Unenglish है।
- (3) **Family Members/Parliament Members** : इनकी जगह हमें Members of Family or Members of Parliament का प्रयोग करना चाहिए।
- (4) **To Give Key to the Watch** : घड़ी में चाबी भरने हेतु उक्त phrase का प्रयोग करना अंग्रेजी का हिन्दीकरण है। इसकी जगह 'To wind the watch' का प्रयोग करना चाहिए।
- (5) **To Eat Food** : यह पूर्णतया Unenglish है। 'I have eaten my food'. इस तरह का प्रयोग पूर्णतया एक Unenglish प्रयोग है। English में अधिकांशतः खाने का नाम प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे :
Have you had your lunch? Have you had your dinner?
Breakfast हेतु take की जगह have का प्रयोग करना चाहिए।
I have taken my breakfast की जगह हमें लिखना चाहिए। I have had my breakfast.
- (6) **Sick/Ill** : Sick का अर्थ शारीरिक बीमारियों हेतु नहीं करना चाहिए। Sick का अर्थ मानसिक थकान, परेशानियों से होता है।
I am sick Or He fell sick की जगह I am ill Or He fell ill लिखना चाहिए।
Sick का प्रयोग निम्न अर्थ में सही है:
I am sick of this life means. I am tired of this life.
- (7) **Pulling on Well** : इसका अर्थ ठीक ठाक खींच रहे हैं के अर्थ में करना गलत है। Pulling well ,एक सही English Idiom है जिसका अर्थ है Working in Harmony.
अतः यह लिखना कि We are pulling on well गलत होगा। इसकी जगह We are pulling well together कहना सही है।
- (8) **Etc** : etc. (ecetera) की abbreviated form है। इसका अर्थ है : and others. इसका प्रयोग such as या and के साथ नहीं करना चाहिए। जैसे :
There were many kinds of fruits in his shop, such as apples, mangoes, plums, pears etc.
Or There were many kinds of fruits in his shop such as apples, mangoes, plums and pears etc.

इन दोनों ही वाक्यों में etc. का गलत प्रयोग किया गया है। इनकी जगह हमें लिखना चाहिए था।

There were many kinds of fruits in his shop, such as apples, mangoes, plums so on.

Or

There were many kinds of fruits in his shop like apples, mangoes, plums, pears etc.

- (9) **Rather Very** : Rather का अर्थ होता है: not very, a little. अतः Rather के साथ very का प्रयोग अनुचित है, गलत है।
जैसे :

She was rather very happy.

Incorrect

She was rather happy.

Correct

Or

She was very happy.

Correct

- (10) **Comparative Better** : Comparative के साथ better या Adjective comparative degree का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए। जैसे :

She is comparatively better.

Incorrect

She is comparatively good.

Correct

She is better.

Correct

- (11) **Or Keeping good health** : इसका प्रयोग अच्छी अंग्रेज़ी में मान्य नहीं है। जैसे :

I think now she is keeping good health.

इसकी अपेक्षा यह कहना चाहिए।

I think now she is well.

- (12) **No mention/No matter** : Thanks के प्रत्युत्तर में इन शब्दों का काफ़ी प्रयोग प्रचलित है। इनकी अपेक्षा All right or It's all right कहना अधिक उपयुक्त है।

- (13) **Generally/Always** : एक ही वाक्य में Generally एवं Always दोनों का प्रयोग करना गलत है। Generally का अर्थ Always को contradict करता है।

Generally he is always late की जगह हमें मात्र यही कहना चाहिए कि Generally he is late.

- (14) **Tomorrow morning/Next morning** : यदि Present tense का वाक्य है, तो हमें Tomorrow morning का प्रयोग करना चाहिए एवं Past tense के वाक्य के लिए next morning का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। जैसे :

I will go to Jaipur tomorrow morning.

I went to Jaipur the next morning.

- (15) **As best as he can** : इस phrase की जगह as well as he can का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। as well का प्रयोग एक comparison को व्यक्त करता है। best का प्रयोग करने पर Superlative degree of adjective होने के कारण इसका comparative प्रयोग गलत है।

- (16) **Because/In order that/So that** : कारण (cause) को express करने हेतु because का प्रयोग किया जाता है, जबकि Purpose को express करने हेतु in order that या so that का प्रयोग किया जाता है। निम्न वाक्यों को देखें :

We eat because we may live.

Incorrect

We eat so that we may live.

Correct

I took medicine because I might get well.

Incorrect

I took medicine in order that I might get well.

Correct

- (17) **In respect of/With respect to** : ये दोनों Phrase अलग-अलग अर्थ में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। In respect of, से पूर्व adjective का प्रयोग होता है। इसका अर्थ है In point of some quality. देखें :

He is senior to her in respect of service.

With respect to का प्रयोग किसी subject (noun) के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है जैसे :

We must have a discussion with respect to the proposal given by him.

- (18) **Both and/as well as/Not only but also** : उक्त Conjunction का प्रयोग करते समय यह ध्यान में रखें कि जो fact ज्यादा महत्वपूर्ण है, उसे बाद में लिखें। जैसे :

He was both expelled from the school and degraded from his class.

इसकी अपेक्षा हमें लिखना चाहिए :

He was both degraded from his class and expelled from the school.

इसी तरह :

Others as well as I declare this to be justified.

इसे हमें लिखना चाहिए :

I as well as others declare this to be justified.

इसी तरह :

Rahim was not only convicted of the crime, but also accused of it.

इसे निम्न प्रकार से लिखना चाहिए :

Rahim was not only accused of the crime, but also convicted of it.

- (19) **Another/Other/Any other** : Another का प्रयोग singular nouns के साथ और other का प्रयोग plurals के साथ किया जाता है। दोनों का प्रयोग Affirmative sentences में किया जाता है। जबकि Another का प्रयोग Negative statements में करते हैं।

- (20) **Fair sex** : Fair sex का प्रयोग women हेतु किया जाता है। Strictly speaking गलत है। In good English, Fair sex का प्रयोग women हेतु करने को avoid करना चाहिए।

- (21) **Lately/Latterly** : Lately एवं Latterly दोनों का अर्थ recently से लिया जाता है, लेकिन Latterly का प्रयोग comparison हेतु Change of condition हेतु किया जाता है। Lately means recent past. Latterly means most recent.

His wife has left him latterly.

Incorrect

His wife has left him lately.

Correct

She has shown a different behaviour lately.

Incorrect

She has shown a different behaviour latterly.

Correct

यहाँ Change of condition बताई गई है।

The old man was in a coma latterly towards the end, at the end, finally.

Dad's health has not been good lately.

- (22) **Pass off** : समय (Time) के सन्दर्भ में pass off का प्रयोग प्रचलित है। जैसे :

The time passes off happily Or The days pass off happily. उपर्युक्त दोनों वाक्यों में off का प्रयोग गलत है।

Pass off का प्रयोग तब किया जाता है जब कुछ गुजरने के बाद, अन्य कुछ घटना शेष नहीं रहता है। जैसे :

The event passes off peacefully and we resume our routine.

Time के सन्दर्भ में केवल pass का ही प्रयोग करना चाहिए। जैसे :

The time passes happily.

The days pass happily.

- (23) **With a view to** : With a view के बाद हमेशा Gerund का प्रयोग होता है। Infinitive (to) का प्रयोग करना गलत है। जैसे :

I journeyed through the different countries of the world with a view to find out the source of true happiness.

इसकी जगह लिखना चाहिए :

I journeyed through the different countries of the world with a view to finding out the source of true happiness.

(24) **What to speak of :** इसका प्रयोग सामान्यतया not to speak of/not to mention के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। जैसे :

What to speak of lunch or dinner, there was no arrangement of breakfast even.

इसकी अपेक्षा यह कहना चाहिए :

There was no arrangement of breakfast even, not to mention lunch or dinner.

इसी तरह :

He can hardly rise from the bed, what to speak of walking.

इसकी अपेक्षा यह कहना चाहिए :

He can hardly rise from the bed, not to speak of walking.

(25) **What to do? :** यह एक Unenglish expression है। इसकी अपेक्षा यह कहना चाहिए What am I to do ?

(26) **To do the needful :** इस phrase का उपयोग, अच्छी अंग्रेजी में मान्य नहीं है। इसकी अपेक्षा हमें निम्न phrase प्रयोग में लाने चाहिए :

Give the necessary instructions.

Or

Make the necessary arrangements.

Or

Give the necessary orders.

(27) **Yes/No :** Yes एवं No में Answer देते समय निम्न गलतियाँ की जाती हैं:

Did you find your purse ?

Yes, I did not find it yet.

इसकी जगह हमें लिखना चाहिए

No, I did not find it yet.



यदि प्रश्न का उत्तर Affirmative में हो तो Yes का प्रयोग करें, यदि उत्तर Negative में है तो No से शुरू करें।

(28) **Good or bad success :** Success के साथ good या bad का प्रयोग करना गलत है। Success may be great or small, important or trivial, but never good or bad.

(29) **Splitting of Words :** निम्न शब्दों को दो भागों में लिखना गलत है :

Incorrect

any body

more over

else where

other wise

foot ball

work man

arm chair

tea spoon

not with standing

Correct

anybody

moreover

elsewhere

otherwise

football

workman

armchair

teaspoon

notwithstanding

Incorrect

can not

some times

in as much

in stead of

head master

post man

back-bite

half penny

mad man

Correct

cannot

sometimes

inasmuch

instead of

headmaster

postman

backbite

halfpenny

madman

उपरोक्त शब्दों को लिखते समय ध्यान रखें।

(30) **Combination of Words :** निम्न शब्दों को मिलाकर लिखना गलत है:

Incorrect

everyone

alright

youngman

Correct

every one

all right

young man

Incorrect

someone

inspite of

underage

Correct

some one

in spite of

under age

Superfluous Expressions & Unnecessary Wordiness

Unnecessary Wordiness : कई बार वाक्यों में अनावश्यक शब्दों का प्रयोग किया जाता है। इसे unnecessary wordiness कहा जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) **For a long period of time** : यहाँ of time लिखना अनावश्यक है, क्योंकि period के अर्थ में of time का अर्थ समाहित है।
- (2) **Return back** : यहाँ back लिखना अनावश्यक है, क्योंकि Return के अर्थ में back का अर्थ समाहित है।
- (3) **Cousin brother/Cousin sister** : इसमें brother/sister लिखना अनावश्यक है, क्योंकि Cousin के अर्थ में brother/ sister का अर्थ स्वतः ही समाहित है।
- (4) **Retreat back/Recall back/Reimburse back/Recast back/Recede back** : इनके साथ back लिखना अनावश्यक है, क्योंकि Retreat /Recall/Reimburse /Recede/Recast में back का अर्थ समाहित है।
- (5) **Restate/Repeat/Reborn/Rewrite/Reiterate/Rearrange/Rebuild** : इनके साथ again का प्रयोग गलत है, क्योंकि इन शब्दों के अर्थ में again का अर्थ समाहित है।
- (6) **Supposing /Suppose** के साथ if का प्रयोग गलत है।
- (7) **Kindly requested** के साथ kindly का प्रयोग गलत है, क्योंकि request हमेशा kindly ही होती है।
- (8) **Await** के साथ for का प्रयोग गलत है, क्योंकि await का अर्थ wait for होता है।
- (9) **Comprise/despise** के साथ of का प्रयोग गलत है, क्योंकि :
Comprise means Consist of; Despite means In spite of
- (10) **Until/Unless/Forbid/Prohibit/Prevent/Dissuade/Deny/Refuse/Lest** के साथ not का प्रयोग अनुचित है, क्योंकि इनमें Not का meaning समाहित है।
- (11) **Flee** के साथ away का प्रयोग गलत है, क्योंकि flee का अर्थ run away होता है।
- (12) **Coward** के साथ man का प्रयोग गलत है, क्योंकि coward का अर्थ ही कायर आदमी होता है। इसमें man का अर्थ स्वतः ही समाहित होता है।
- (13) **Mutual Agreement** में mutual का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है, क्योंकि agreement तब ही होगा, जब दोनों पार्टियाँ (mutually) स्वीकार करेंगी। इसी तरह Mutual dislike of each other में each other का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है।
- (14) **Two twins** में two का प्रयोग गलत है।
- (15) **Bifurcated Or divided into four quarters** में four का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है।
- (16) **Reason because** का एक साथ प्रयोग अनुचित है, या तो Reason का प्रयोग करें या because का।
- (17) **Because** के साथ therefore, as का प्रयोग गलत है।
- (18) **Equally** और **as good as** दोनों का साथ-साथ प्रयोग कदापि न करें। वाक्य में equally का प्रयोग करें या as good as का।
- (19) **Consensus opinion** में opinion लिखना अनावश्यक है। Consensus में opinion का अर्थ समाहित है।
- (20) **Final conclusion** में final लिखना अनावश्यक है, क्योंकि conclusion का अर्थ ही final होता है।
- (21) **Spouse wife/husband wife/husband** का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है, क्योंकि Spouse के अर्थ में wife/husband का अर्थ समाहित है।
- (22) **Consort husband/wife** में husband/wife का प्रयोग करना अनावश्यक है, क्योंकि consort का अर्थ होता है husband or wife of a ruler.
- (23) **Funeral service** में service का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है, क्योंकि Funeral एक service ही है।
- (24) **Over ride/Over take/Over turn/Over shoot** आदि के साथ पुनः over का प्रयोग करना गलत है।
- (25) **With bag and baggage** में with का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है, क्योंकि bag and baggage का अर्थ with all belongings होता है।

He returned bag and baggage.

-

TEST YOURSELF Exercises

Correct the following sentences .:

- Correct the following sentences :***

- Correct the following sentences :***

- (1) I can not play football today.
- (2) He achieved good success in B.A. examination.
- (3) He sometimes comes to visit his parents.
- (4) Everyone will be given a certificate.
- (5) Have you found your lost purse?
No, I have found.
- (6) It is not the men, but the fair sex, responsible for the present trend in fashion.
- (7) Not with standing the present degradation in the society, he believes in fair means even today.
- (8) Inspite of increase in turn over, the profit remains the same.
- (9) Ram discussed the matter with so many another fellows.
- (10) Ram and his other friend Shyam went to Jaipur yesterday.

Problems of Superfluous Expressions

04

Read the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part :

- (1) All the members (a)/of the club are (b)/kindly requested (c)/to attend the meeting. (d)
- (2) This is the wristwatch (a)/which my uncle (b)/brought it (c)/for you. (d)
- (3) She asked me (a)/where I was going to (b)/and what I had done (c)/the previous day. (d)
- (4) He will leave (a)/for Mexico (b)/on Monday (c)/with bag and baggage. (d)
- (5) This idea of the (a)/Home Minister's (b)/has put everyone (c)/in serious thoughts. (d)
- (6) The teacher forbade (a)/the students not to (b)/make a noise. (c)
- (7) Rita, cousin sister of the (a)/MP said that she would (b)/contest the next (c)/election certainly. (d)
- (8) "Harish is comparatively better (a)/today and we hope that (b)/he will recover soon" (c)/said Ramesh. (d)
- (9) Yesterday in the night (a)/he came by bus (b)/and was disturbed. (c)
- (10) In Jaipur she (a)/came across with many (b)/of her friends (c)/who had settled thereafter marriage. (d)

05

Read the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part :

- (1) Pakistan's support (a)/to the terrorists in India (b)/is universally condemned (c)/by all. (d)
- (2) Within two hours (a)/we will approach (b)/near Agra (c)/by car. (d)
- (3) Suppose if (a)/all problems are solved (b)/what would you do then? (c)
- (4) When he lent me (a)/some money, he asked (b)/to return it back (c)/within a week. (d)
- (5) Through out the whole year (a)/there was (b)/not a single day (c)/without any incidence of violence. (d)
- (6) The recent incidents of corruption (a)/amply illustrate about (b)/ the characters of (c)/our political leaders. (d)
- (7) The thing what (a)/ you like is (b)/available in (c)/that departmental store. (d)
- (8) He denied that(a)/he was not present(b)/there at the time(c)/the accident took place. (d)
- (9) The PM said (a)/that it was his decision (b)/and that nobody (c)/could get it changed. (d)
- (10) The students (a)/requested the teacher (b)/to repeat the question (c)/again. (d)

06

Read the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part:

- (1) The reason why (a)/most of the people commit crime (b)/is because they are unaware (c)/of the legal complications. (d)
- (2) He doesn't hardly know (a)/about the real factors (b)/that have created (c)/so many problems. (d)
- (3) My mother asked me (a)/if I have sufficient enough money (b)/to buy the books. (c)
- (4) They were quite all right (a)/when they went to the police station (b)/to lodge an FIR. (c)
- (5) He stayed in Jammu (a)/for a very short period of time (b)/and then went to (c)/Kolkata. (d)
- (6) He reimbursed back (a)/the money which I spent (b)/on his medical treatment. (c)
- (7) I have to attend (a)/the funeral service (b)/of my dear departed friend (c)/today. (d)
- (8) Unless you do not (a)/pass this examination (b)/you cannot get the job. (c)
- (9) I want to know (a)/whether it is (b)/the right and proper time (c)/to start this business. (d)
- (10) The second project (a)/of this company was equally as (b)/successful (c)/the first project. (d)

07

Read the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part :

- (1) He was (a)/very friendly enough (b)/to help me (c)/when I was in trouble. (d)
- (2) My friend asked (a)/me if there was any place (b)/in the (c)/compartment for him. (d)
- (3) I know (a)/that more than hundred (b)/students have applied (c)/for freeship. (d)

- (4) Each competitor (a)/tried his best (b)/to defeat one another (c)/in the wrestling match. (d)
- (5) He put his sign (a)/at the foot of the (b)/letter and posted it (c)/immediately. (d)
- (6) She ran as (a)/fastly as she could (b)/to catch the train. (c)
- (7) The officer advised me (a)/to talk to the concerned clerk (b)/in case I feel any (c)/problem in the matter. (d)
- (8) Many pupils of this college (a)/are working as teachers (b)/in different (c)/public schools. (d)
- (9) He was (a)/awarded cent percent (b)/marks in (c)/mathematics. (d)
- (10) All his family members (a)/are social (b)/and cooperative. (c)

08

Read the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part :

- (1) To what has (a)/always puzzled me (b)/is your insincerity (c)/and carelessness. (d)
- (2) According to me (a)/every student should (b)/go through the (c)/notes given by the professors. (d)
- (3) One of my friends (a) /is in the teaching line (b)/and presently settled (c)/abroad. (d)
- (4) Now-a-days she (a)/is living in foreign (b)/but her husband (c)/is in India. (d)
- (5) Our English teacher said (a)/that we should practice (b)/regularly if we wanted to improve (c)/our English. (d)
- (6) I want to join (a)/lecturership (b)/because I think it is a (c)/peaceful profession. (d)
- (7) As my neighbours (a)/are very cooperative (b)/so I do not have (c)/any problem here. (d)
- (8) The passing marks (a)/are thirty there (b)/but you have secured (c)/only thirty two marks. (d)
- (9) Both of them. (a)/have not (b)/turned up in (c)/the court today(d) No error. (e)
- (10) We must wait (a)/for quieter time before (b)/the claims of civilisation (c)/can over ride over the claims of the party spirit. (d)

**SOLUTIONS****TEST YOURSELF Exercises****Solution TYE 01**

- (1) He has been ill since Monday.
- (2) I take my dinner at 8 pm.
- (3) There were many kinds of bag in the shop, such as paper, leather, cloth and canvas.
- (4) Ramesh said to me, "Sita was rather happy on that day."
- (5) All the members of his family are planning to visit Jammu and Kashmir.
- (6) I wind my wrist watch at 8 pm daily.
- (7) I have my breakfast at 7 a.m. daily.
- (8) He said, "Today I am feeling better."
- (9) Sunita always wears blue saree on such functions.
- (10) She went to Delhi the next morning.

Solution TYE 02

- (1) We eat so that we may live.
- (2) She didn't attend the meeting because she was ill.
- (3) I took medicine, in order that I might get well soon.
- (4) He is both a philosopher and a teacher.
- (5) Either he is a stupid or a rogue.
- (6) Ram as well as others declares this an unethical act.
- (7) The women are not allowed to participate in the competition.
- (8) The days pass happily.
- (9) With a view to studying the current publications he joined the library.
- (10) Did you find your pen ? No, I didn't find it so far.

Solution TYE 03

- (1) I cannot play football today.
- (2) He achieved great success in BA examination.
- (3) He sometimes comes to visit his parents.
- (4) Everyone will be given a certificate.
- (5) Have you found your lost purse?
Yes, I have found it.
- (6) It is not the men, but the women, responsible for the present trend in fashion.
- (7) Notwithstanding the present degradation in the society, he believes in fair means even today.
- (8) In spite of increase in turn over, the profit remains the same.
- (9) Ram discussed the matter with so many other fellows.
- (10) Ram and his another friend Shyam went to Jaipur yesterday.

Solution TYE 04

- (1) (c) kindly को Delete करें। Kindly का प्रयोग superfluous है, use either kindly or requested
- (2) (c) It का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (3) (b) to का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (4) (d) with का प्रयोग superfluous है, The phrase 'bag and baggage' includes 'with'
- (5) (b) Home Minister के साथ apostrophe ('s) का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (6) (b) not का प्रयोग forbade के साथ superfluous है। forbade का अर्थ स्वतः ही negative होता है।
- (7) (a) sister या brother का cousin के साथ प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (8) (a) Comparatively better दोनों का प्रयोग एक साथ गलत है। या तो लिखना चाहिए
Harish is comparatively good या फिर Harish is better.
- (9) (a) Yesterday in the night की जगह last night लिखना चाहिए। Yesterday night लिखना भी गलत है।
- (10) (b) across के साथ with का प्रयोग superfluous है।

Solution TYE 05

- (1) (d) by all का प्रयोग universally लिखने के बाद superfluous है।
- (2) (c) near का प्रयोग approach के साथ superfluous है।
- (3) (a) Suppose के साथ if का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (4) (c) back का प्रयोग return के साथ superfluous है।
- (5) (a) whole का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (6) (b) Illustrate/describe/discuss के बाद object आता है। यहाँ about का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (7) (a) what की जगह which का प्रयोग या The thing को हटाना होगा। what के साथ किसी antecedent का होना आवश्यक है।
जैसे
What you like most is this pen.
The thing which you like most is this pen.
- (8) (b) not का प्रयोग deny के साथ गलत है। deny/refuse/ prevent/forbid/until/unless सभी negative हैं। इनके साथ not का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
- (9) (c) यहाँ that का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (10) (d) repeat के साथ again का प्रयोग superfluous है। Repeat/Recast/Rewrite के साथ again का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Solution TYE 06

- (1) (c) जिस वाक्य में reason का प्रयोग होता है उसी में because का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (2) (a) hardly/scarcely स्वयं negative है इनके साथ not या doesn't का प्रयोग गलत है।
- (3) (b) sufficient एवं enough का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है।
- (4) (a) quite के साथ all का प्रयोग गलत है। या तो quite को हटाएँ या all को हटाएँ।
- (5) (b) of time का प्रयोग superfluous है। या तो for a short period या for a short time का प्रयोग करें।
- (6) (a) reimburse/return के साथ back का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (7) (b) funeral के साथ service का प्रयोग superfluous है। funeral स्वयं में ही service है।
- (8) (a) Unless/until/forbid/refuse/deny/hardly/ scarcely के साथ not का प्रयोग करें ये सब स्वतः ही negative है।
- (9) (c) right या proper में से या तो right का प्रयोग होगा या proper का। दोनों का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है।
- (10) (b) equally का प्रयोग superfluous है। इन वाक्यों को देखें :
Ram and Rahim are equally successful.
Ram is as successful as Rahim.

Solution TYE 07

- (1) (b) very का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (2) (b) place की जगह room शब्द का प्रयोग होगा, room in car/compartment/train/bus होता है।
- (3) (d) freeship एक Unenglish expression है। free studentship होगा।
- (4) (c) one another की जगह the other का प्रयोग होगा। each के साथ other का प्रयोग होता है।
- (5) (a) sign की जगह signature होगा। sign एक verb है, जबकि signature एक noun है।
- (6) (b) fastly की जगह fast ही होगा। fast एक adjective भी है एवं adverb भी। अतः इसे adverb की तरह प्रयोग करते समय ly लगाने की आवश्यकता नहीं होती है।
He is a fast runner. *Adjective*
He ran fast. *Adverb*
- (7) (b) concerned clerk का अर्थ होता है चिन्तित क्लर्क। यहाँ concerned clerk की जगह clerk concerned होगा। जिसका अर्थ होता है सम्बन्धित क्लर्क।
- (8) (a) pupils की जगह students होगा। pupils का अर्थ होता है शिष्य। यहाँ वाक्य में pupils शब्द का प्रयोग अनुचित है।
- (9) (b) cent percent एक Unenglish expression है। इसकी जगह hundred per cent होगा।
- (10) (a) All the members of his family होगा। Standard English में family member या family members का प्रयोग गलत है।

Solution TYE 08

- (1) (a) To का प्रयोग superfluous है।
- (2) (a) According to me की जगह In my opinion होना चाहिए। First person के साथ According to me का प्रयोग Standard english में मान्य नहीं है। According to us, According to him सही है।
- (3) (b) teaching line की जगह teaching profession लिखना चाहिए।
- (4) (b) in foreign की जगह abroad होगा या in foreign country लिखना सही होगा।
- (5) (a) English Teacher की जगह teacher of English लिखना सही है। English teacher का अर्थ अंग्रेज अध्यापक होता है। न कि अंग्रेजी का अध्यापक।
- (6) (b) lectureship होगा। lecturership, Unenglish expression है।
- (7) (a) neighbourers कोई English word नहीं है। सही English word neighbours है।
- (8) (a) passing marks की जगह pass marks होगा।
- (9) (c) वाक्य सही है।
- (10) (d) over ride के बाद over का प्रयोग superfluous है।

QUESTION FRAMING

Questions को सामान्यतया निम्नलिखित तीन भागों में वर्गीकृत किया जा सकता है:

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| (A) Yes/No Questions | (B) Wh Questions |
| (C) Tag Questions | (D) Alternate Questions |
| (E) Short Questions | (F) Rhetorical Questions |

(A) Yes/No Questions : ऐसे प्रश्न जिनका उत्तर Yes या No में दिया जा सकता है, Yes/No questions कहलाते हैं। इस तरह के प्रश्न, Helping verbs से शुरू होते हैं। जैसे:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| (a) Do you know me? | (b) Does she live here? |
| (c) Is he going ? | (d) Are you not well? |
| (e) Did he come here? | (f) Was he playing? |
| (g) Has he come? | (h) Have you a pen? |
| (i) Had he completed his work? | (j) Will you go to market? |
| (k) Shall you apply for this job? | (l) Can you do this work? |
| (m) May I came in? | (n) Would you go there? |

उपरोक्त सभी प्रश्न Helping verbs (Auxiliaries) से शुरू हैं एवं इनका उत्तर Yes/No में दिया जा सकता है।

(B) Wh-Questions : ऐसे प्रश्न हैं जो Wh-words; Why, Who, Where, When, Whose, Whom, How, What etc.; से शुरू होते हैं। ऐसे प्रश्नों में कुछ जानकारी चाही गई होती है। इनका उत्तर Yes/No में देना सम्भव नहीं होता है। ऐसे प्रश्नों को Wh-questions के नाम से जाना जाता है। जैसे:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| (a) What is your name? | (b) Where do you live? |
| (c) Who is he? | (d) When did you come? |
| (e) How are you ? | (f) Whose pen is this? |
| (g) Whom do you like to meet? | (h) Why did he come? |

(C) Tag Questions : इन्हें Question tag या Tag questions के नाम से जाना जाता है। इस तरह के Questions, वाक्य के अन्त में एक पुछल्ले की तरह attach होते हैं। इनका उद्देश्य, अपने कथन को प्रभावशाली बनाना या कथन की ओर श्रोता का ध्यान आकर्षित करना होता है, या अपने कथन की पुष्टि चाहना होता है। इस तरह के questions निम्न प्रकार के होते हैं :

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (a) He is going to market, isn't he? | (b) She will help you, won't she? |
| (c) You are a gentleman, aren't you? | (d) Sugar is sweet, isn't it? |

कुछ अन्य प्रकार के प्रश्न भी होते हैं। जैसे:

(D) Alternate Questions :

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| (a) Are you playing or not? | (b) Will you go or not? |
| (c) Has she arrived or not? | (d) Did he agree or not? |

इस तरह के प्रश्नों में or not लगाकर, एक choice/ alternate व्यक्त किया जाता है। जैसे:

(E) Short Questions :

- (a) I am going to buy a car.
 (b) He is going to America.
 (c) He has resigned from the service?

When/Why/Where/Which car?
 When/Why/by which flight?
 When/Why/What for?

इस तरह के एक साथ किए गए कई प्रश्न, प्रश्न पूछने वाले की अति उत्सुकता को व्यक्त करते हैं। ऐसे प्रश्नों को Short questions कहा जाता है।

(F) Rhetorical Questions :

- (a) Who is not without faults?
 (b) Who can speak against the chairman?
 (c) Who will live forever?
 (d) Who can bell the cat?

(Everybody has some faults.)
 (Nobody can speak.)
 (None can live forever, man is mortal.)
 (None can.)

इस तरह के प्रश्न, जिनका Answer सभी को पता होता है, केवल अपनी बात को प्रश्न के रूप में कहकर, Impress upon करने हेतु प्रयुक्त होते हैं। इस तरह के प्रश्न Rhetorical questions कहलाते हैं।

Framing of Questions

- (1) Yes/No Questions :** Yes/No questions के बारे में आपने tense के अध्याय में विस्तृत रूप से पढ़ लिया है। अतः हम इसे यहाँ नहीं बता रहे हैं। ध्यान रखें इस तरह के questions का structure निम्न होता है :

Helping verb + subject + verb + object.

Verb की कौन-सी form प्रयुक्त होगी, यह वाक्य के tense पर निर्भर होता है। कई वाक्यों में helping verb मुख्य verb का कार्य करती है। वहाँ verb नहीं लगती है। जैसे:

Affirmative

- (a) He is a student.
 (b) She is a girl.
 (c) He has a pen.
 (d) They have a car.

Interrogative

Is he a student?
 Is she a girl?
 Has he a pen?
 Have they a car?

- (2) Wh-Questions :** पूर्व में बताया गया है, Wh-questions, Wh-words; जैसे: What, Why, Which, When, Where, Who, Whose, Whom, How आदि; से शुरू होते हैं।



- (1) यदि वाक्य में कोई भी helping verb नहीं है, तो Do/does/did को Wh-word के बाद लगाकर, प्रश्न शुरू करें। ध्यान रखें, यदि does का प्रयोग किया गया है तो verb के साथ s या es नहीं लगाया जाएगा। यदि 'did' का प्रयोग किया गया है, तो verb की I form लगानी होगी। जैसे:

- (a) What does/did he like? (b) Where does he go?
 (c) Why did he go? (d) Where did he go?
 (e) When does he come? (f) When did he come?

Does वाले Questions के Affirmative sentences में verb के साथ s या es लगता है। इसी प्रकार did वाले questions के Affirmative sentence में verb की II form लगती है।

- (2) यदि वाक्य में helping verb (is/am/are/was/were/will/shall/have/has/had etc.) है, तो इन्हें Wh-word के बाद लगाकर प्रश्न बनाया जाता है।

- (3) Pronouns (I, you, we, my, our, your, his, her, hers etc.) का प्रयोग answer को समझते हुए या प्रश्न किससे करना है, यह देखकर करना होता है।

अब हम प्रत्येक Wh-word से question बनाने हेतु क्या करना चाहिए, यह देखेंगे।

(A) 'What' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न:

Read the following examples:

Answer

- (a) His name is Ramesh.
- (b) I am playing football.
- (c) I want to play.
- (d) He likes this book.
- (e) This is calculator.
- (f) He wrote a letter.
- (g) She bought a book.
- (h) He can solve this question.

Question

- What is his name?
- What are you doing/playing?
- What do you want?
- What does he like?
- What is this?
- What did he write?
- What did she buy?
- What can he do ?



What को वाक्य के शुरू में लिखें। उसके बाद यदि कोई helping verb है तो helping verb लिखें। यदि नहीं है तो tense के अनुसार Do/does/did इत्यादि लिखकर उसके बाद subject लिखें, फिर verb + object लिखें। verb के साथ s या es नहीं लगता है (यदि प्रश्न Simple present का है तो) इसी प्रकार Past tense के प्रश्न में verb की I form लगती है।

(B) 'Who' से शुरू करने वाले प्रश्न:

Read the following Examples:

Answer

- (a) Ram came here.
- (b) He killed the lion.
- (c) Sita teaches us English.
- (d) Ramesh won the match.
- (e) I am Suresh from Alwar.
- (f) Hari has joined the college.
- (g) Ram is going to Jaipur.
- (h) Ramesh is swimming in the river.

Question

- Who came here?
- Who killed the lion?
- Who teaches you English?
- Who won the match?
- Who are you?
- Who has joined the college?
- Who is going to Jaipur?
- Who is swimming in the river?



वाक्यों में subject की जगह 'Who' लिखें। उसके बाद यदि कोई helping verb है तो helping verb लिखें, नहीं है तो वाक्य में प्रयुक्त verb लिखें। अब pronoun में आवश्यकतानुसार परिवर्तन करने से 'Who' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न बन जाते हैं।

(C) 'Whose' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न : Whose का अर्थ होता है 'किसका'। अतः whose से प्रश्न तब ही बनाया जा सकता है जब Answer में my, your, his, her, our, their etc का प्रयोग किया गया होता।

See the following examples:

Answer

- (a) This is his pen.
- (b) She sold her car.
- (c) Ramesh purchased her house.
- (d) I visited his company.
- (e) I saw her bungalow.
- (f) I respect your parents.
- (g) I had found his purse.
- (h) I shall purchase his car.

Question

- Whose pen is this ?
- Whose car did she sell?
- Whose house did Ramesh purchase?
- Whose company did you visit?
- Whose bungalow did you see?
- Whose parents do you respect?
- Whose purse had you found?
- Whose car will you purchase?



- (1) सबसे पहले whose लगायें, उसके बाद noun लिखें। फिर helping verb लिखकर, subject + verb + object लिखें।
 (2) Present Indefinite के वाक्यों में does का प्रयोग (as helping verb) होता है, तो verb के साथ लगा s या es हट जाता है।
 (3) Past Indefinite के वाक्यों में whose के साथ did का प्रयोग होता है, उस स्थिति में verb की I form लगाई जाती है।

(D) 'Whom' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न : Whom का अर्थ होता है 'किसको'। अतः Answer में यदि कोई noun (किसी का नाम) या pronoun होगा तभी who से प्रश्न बनाया जा सकता है।

Read the following examples:

Answer

- (a) I know Sita.
 (b) I like her.
 (c) The collector rewarded his brother.
 (d) Your sister was wandering with Sunny.
 (e) I saw his sister in the club.
 (f) I met Sita in the garden.

Question

- Whom do you know?
 Whom do you like?
 Whom did the collector reward?
 Whom was my sister wandering with?
 Whom did you see in the club.
 Whom did you meet in the garden?



- (1) सबसे पहले 'Whom' लिखें, फिर आवश्यकतानुसार helping verb लिखें।
 (2) उसके बाद subject लिखकर, शेष वाक्य को लिख दें।
 (3) ध्यान रखें did (helping verb) का प्रयोग होने पर प्रश्न में verb की I form लगेगी एवं does का प्रयोग होने पर, verb के साथ लगा s या es हट जाता है।

(E) 'When' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न : When से समय का पता चलता है। When का प्रयोग तब ही हो सकता है जब Answer में 'समय' का सन्दर्भ हो।

Read the following examples :

Answer

- (a) He came at 8 p.m.
 (b) He goes at 10 a.m.
 (c) I met her yesterday.
 (d) I will go to Jaipur next Monday.
 (e) Our examination will start on 24th Jan.
 (f) The train arrived at 5 p.m.

Question

- When did he come?
 When does he go?
 When did you meet her?
 When will you go to Jaipur?
 When will your examination start?
 When did the train arrive?



सबसे पहले When लिखें। उसके बाद यदि कोई helping verb है तो helping verb लिखें। यदि नहीं है तो tense के अनुसार Do/does/did इत्यादि लिखकर उसके बाद subject लिखकर, शेष वाक्य को लिखें। ध्यान रखें, helping verb, does आने पर verb में लगा s या es हट जाता है एवं Past tense में did का प्रयोग होने पर verb की I form लगती है।

(F) 'Where' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न : Where से स्थान का बोध होता है। अतः where से प्रश्न तब बनाया जाता है, जब Answer में स्थान का सन्दर्भ आता है।

Read the following examples :

Answer

- (a) I am going to market.
- (b) He lives in this room.
- (c) She works here.
- (d) You can find her in the park.
- (e) He stayed at Alwar.
- (f) She will go to Delhi.

Question

- Where are you going?
- Where does he live?
- Where does she work?
- Where can I find her?
- Where did he stay?
- Where will she go?



- (1) सबसे पहले Where लिखें, उसके बाद यदि कोई helping verb है, तो helping verb लिखें। यदि नहीं है तो tense के अनुसार Do/does/did इत्यादि लिखकर उसके बाद subject लिखकर, शेष वाक्य को लिखें।
 (2) ध्यान रखें, helping verb, does या did का प्रयोग हो तो पूर्व में बताए अनुसार verb में परिवर्तन करें।

(G) 'Why' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न: Why का अर्थ होता है 'क्यों'

Read the following examples:

Answer

- (a) I go to school to read.
- (b) He came here to meet me.
- (c) He goes to Jaipur to attend the meeting.
- (d) I am sad because I have failed.
- (e) The teacher punished Sita because she was talking.
- (f) We eat to live.

Question

- Why do you go to school?
- Why did he come here?
- Why does he go to Jaipur?
- Why are you sad ?
- Why did the teacher punish Sita?
- Why do we eat ?



- (1) सबसे पहले Why लिखें, उसके बाद helping verb लिखें। उसके बाद subject + verb + लिखना है।
 (2) वाक्य में आए because, therefore इत्यादि को छोड़ दें।
 (3) Helping verb does/did जब लगायें तो verb में पूर्व में बताए नियमानुसार संशोधन करें।

(H) 'Which' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न : Which का अर्थ है कौन-सा। जब question, which से बनाना हो, तो answer में selection, choice या preference का समावेश होता है। जैसे : Read the following examples:

Answer

- (a) I like green shirt.
- (b) This is the best book on Mathematics.
- (c) This is Sarla's bag.
- (d) I do not like the green dress.
- (e) He prefers black tie.

Question

- Which shirt do you like?
- Which is the best book on Mathematics ?
- Which is Sarla's bag ?
- Which dress do you not like?
- Which tie does he prefer ?



- (1) Question के प्रारम्भ में Which लगाते हैं, यदि answer में helping verb है तो which के बाद helping verb लगाते हैं। यदि नहीं है, तो noun लगाकर फिर do, does, did आदि लगाते हैं।
 (2) Pronoun में आवश्यकतानुसार परिवर्तन किया जाता है।

(I) 'How' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न: How का अर्थ होता है 'कैसे'।

Read the following examples:

Answer	Question
(a) I am fine.	How are you ?
(b) He looks smart.	How does he look?
(c) She is well now.	How is she now?
(d) They are enjoying nicely there.	How are they enjoying there?
(e) He performed well.	How did he perform?



- (1) सर्वप्रथम How लिखकर, प्रश्न शुरू करें। उसके बाद helping verb लगायें फिर subject लगायें एवं verb एवं object को लिखें।
 (2) जैसा does/did helping verb के सम्बन्ध में पूर्व में बताया गया है, main verb में संशोधन करें।

(J) 'How many' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न : How many का अर्थ होता है 'कितने'। Many से संख्या का ज्ञान होता है यह Countables के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है। Many से प्रश्न तब ही बनता है, जब Answer में किसी noun की संख्या व्यक्ति की जाती है।

Read the following examples:

Answer	Question
(a) I have three vehicles.	How many vehicles have you?
(b) My father gave me five copies.	How many copies did your father give you?
(c) He bought five books.	How many books did he buy?
(d) They sold three cycles.	How many cycles did they sell?
(e) He has four cars.	How many cars has he?



- (1) सबसे पहले How many से वाक्य शुरू करें, फिर noun + helping verb का प्रयोग करें एवं फिर subject लिखकर main verb/object लिखें।
 (2) यदि Present Indefinite का वाक्य है एवं helping verb 'does' का प्रयोग किया गया है तो verb के साथ लगा 's or es' हट जाता है, इसी प्रकार Past tense के वाक्यों में helping 'did' का प्रयोग होने की स्थिति में verb की I form लगती है।

(K) 'How long' से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न : How long का अर्थ होता है 'कितनी देर' या 'कितना लम्बा'। अतः Answer में इनका उत्तर है तो ही How long का प्रयोग प्रश्न हेतु किया जा सकता है।

Read the following examples:

Answer	Question
(a) This hall is forty feet long.	How long is this hall?
(b) I have been waiting for you for two hours.	How long have you been waiting for me?
(c) He was there for two hours only.	How long was he there?
(d) He delivered speech for fifty minutes.	How long did he deliver the speech?



- (1) How long से प्रश्न शुरू करें, उसके बाद Helping verb + subject लिखें। उसके बाद verb/adverb/object वाक्य की संरचना के अनुसार लिखें।
 (2) does/did का प्रयोग होने की स्थिति में verb में संशोधन पूर्व में बताए नियमानुसार करें।